

The sip:provider PRO Handbook mr3.8.11

Sipwise GmbH <support@sipwise.com>

Contents

1	nt	ro	du	cti	on
		10	uu	υu	U II

	1.1	About this Document	1
	1.2	Getting Help	1
		1.2.1 Phone Support	1
		1.2.2 Ticket System	1
	1.3	What is the sip:provider PRO?	2
	1.4	What is inside the sip:provider PRO?	2
	1.5	Who should use the sip:provider PRO?	2
2	Plat	form Architecture	3
			-
	2.1	SIP Signaling and Media Relay	4
		2.1.1 SIP and Media Elements	4
		SIP Load-Balancer	4
		SIP Proxy/Registrar	5
		SIP Back-to-Back User-Agent (B2BUA)	6
		SIP App-Server	6
		Media Relay	7
		2.1.2 Basic Call Flows	8
		Endpoint Registration	8
		Basic Call	11
		Session Keep-Alive	12
		Voicebox Calls	13
	2.2	High Availability and Fail-Over	14
		2.2.1 Overview	14
		2.2.2 Core Concepts and Configuration	14
		2.2.3 Administration	15
	2.3	Fax Server Architecture	15

1

		2.3.1 Software-Based Fax Server	15
		Fax2Mail Architecture	15
		Sendfax Architecture	16
		2.3.2 Hardware-Based Fax Server	16
		Fax2Mail Architecture	17
		Sendfax Architecture	17
3	Upg	ading the sip:provider PRO	19
	3.1	Preparation	19
	3.2	Upgrade from previous release	21
	3.3	Upgrade from 2.8 LTS	23
4	Inst	llation	27
	4.1	Hardware Specifications	27
		4.1.1 Dimensions and Weight	27
		4.1.2 Front View	28
		4.1.3 Back View	29
	4.2	Installation Prerequisites	30
	4.3	Rack-Mount Installation	30
	4.4	Power Supply Cabling	31
	4.5	Network Cabling	31
5	Adn	inistrative Configuration	32
	5.1	Creating a Customer	32
	5.2	Creating a Subscriber	37
	5.3	Domain Preferences	42
	5.4	Subscriber Preferences	44
	5.5	Creating Peerings	45
		5.5.1 Creating Peering Groups	45
		5.5.2 Creating Peering Servers	47

		5.5.3	Authenticating and Registering against Peering Servers	52
			Proxy-Authentication for outbound calls	52
			Registering at a Peering Server	55
	5.6	Config	uring Rewrite Rule Sets	55
		5.6.1	Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller	58
		5.6.2	Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee	60
		5.6.3	Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller	61
		5.6.4	Outbound Rewrite Rules for Callee	62
		5.6.5	Emergency Number Handling	62
		5.6.6	Assigning Rewrite Rule Sets to Domains and Subscribers	63
		5.6.7	Creating Dialplans for Peering Servers	64
6	Adv	anced	Subscriber Configuration	65
	6.1	Acces	s Control for SIP Calls	65
		6.1.1	Block Lists	65
			Block Modes	66
			Block Lists	66
			Block Anonymous Numbers	67
		6.1.2	NCOS Levels	67
			Creating NCOS Levels	68
			Creating Rules per NCOS Level	69
			Assigning NCOS Levels to Subscribers/Domains	71
			Assigning NCOS Level for Forwarded Calls to Subscribers/Domains	72
		6.1.3	IP Address Restriction	72
	6.2	Call Fo	prwarding and Call Hunting	73
		6.2.1	Setting a simple Call Forward	73
		6.2.2	Advanced Call Hunting	74
			Configuring Destination Sets	74
			Configuring Time Sets	76

	6.3	Limiting Subscriber Preferences via Subscriber Profiles	77
		6.3.1 Subscriber Profile Sets	77
	6.4	Voicemail System	79
		6.4.1 Accessing the IVR Menu	79
		Mapping numbers and codes to IVR access	79
		External IVR access	80
		6.4.2 IVR Menu Structure	80
	6.5	Configuring Subscriber IVR Language	81
	6.6	Sound Sets	82
		6.6.1 Configuring Early Reject Sound Sets	83
	6.7	Conference System	87
		6.7.1 Configuring Call Forward to Conference	87
		6.7.2 Configuring Conference Sound Sets	88
		6.7.3 Entering the Conference with a PIN	89
7	Cus	tomer Self-Care Interfaces	90
7	Cus 7.1	tomer Self-Care Interfaces The Customer Self-Care Web Interface	90 90
7		The Customer Self-Care Web Interface	
7		The Customer Self-Care Web Interface	90 90
7	7.1	The Customer Self-Care Web Interface 7.1.1 Login Procedure	90 90 90
7	7.1	The Customer Self-Care Web Interface	90 90 90
7	7.17.27.3	The Customer Self-Care Web Interface	 90 90 90 90 90 91
8	7.1 7.2 7.3 Billi	The Customer Self-Care Web Interface 7.1.1 Login Procedure 7.1.2 Site Customization The Vertical Service Code Interface The Voicemail Interface	90909090909193
8	7.17.27.3	The Customer Self-Care Web Interface 7.1.1 Login Procedure 7.1.2 Site Customization The Vertical Service Code Interface The Voicemail Interface ng Configuration Billing Data Import	 90 90 90 90 90 90 91 93 93
8	7.1 7.2 7.3 Billi	The Customer Self-Care Web Interface 7.1.1 Login Procedure 7.1.2 Site Customization The Vertical Service Code Interface The Voicemail Interface Interface Billing Data Import 8.1.1 Creating Billing Profiles	 90 90 90 90 90 91 93 93 93
8	7.1 7.2 7.3 Billi	The Customer Self-Care Web Interface 7.1.1 Login Procedure 7.1.2 Site Customization The Vertical Service Code Interface The Voicemail Interface The Voicemail Interface Billing Data Import 8.1.1 Creating Billing Profiles 8.1.2 Creating Billing Fees	 90 90 90 90 90 91 93 93 93 95
8	7.1 7.2 7.3 Billi	The Customer Self-Care Web Interface 7.1.1 Login Procedure 7.1.2 Site Customization The Vertical Service Code Interface The Voicemail Interface mg Configuration Billing Data Import 8.1.1 Creating Billing Profiles 8.1.2 Creating Billing Fees 8.1.3 Creating Off-Peak Times	 90 90 90 90 90 91 93 93 93 95 97
8	7.1 7.2 7.3 Billi	The Customer Self-Care Web Interface 7.1.1 Login Procedure 7.1.2 Site Customization The Vertical Service Code Interface The Voicemail Interface Ing Configuration Billing Data Import 8.1.1 Creating Billing Profiles 8.1.2 Creating Billing Fees 8.1.3 Creating Off-Peak Times 8.1.4 Prepaid Accounting	 90 90 90 90 90 91 93 93 93 95 97 99
8	7.1 7.2 7.3 Billi	The Customer Self-Care Web Interface 7.1.1 Login Procedure 7.1.2 Site Customization The Vertical Service Code Interface The Voicemail Interface mg Configuration Billing Data Import 8.1.1 Creating Billing Profiles 8.1.2 Creating Billing Fees 8.1.3 Creating Off-Peak Times	 90 90 90 90 91 93 93 93 93 95 97 99 100

		8.2.1	File Name Format	101
		8.2.2	File Format	101
			File Header Format	101
			File Body Format for Call Detail Records (CDR)	102
			File Body Format for Event Detail Records (EDR)	106
			File Trailer Format	107
		8.2.3	File Transfer	108
9	Invo	oices ar	nd invoice templates	109
	9.1	Invoice	es management	109
	9.2	Invoice	e templates	111
		9.2.1	Invoice Templates management	111
		9.2.2	Invoice Template content	112
			Layers	113
			Edit SVG XML source	115
			Change logo image	117
		9.2.3	Save and preview invoice template content.	118
	9.3	Invoice	es generation	120
10	Ema	ail temp	plates	123
	10.1	Email	events	123
	10.2	Initial 1	emplate values and template variables	123
	10.3	Passw	ord reset email template	123
	10.4	New s	ubscriber notification email template	124
	10.5	i Invoice	e email template	124
	10.6	6 Email	templates management	126
11	Prov	visionir	ng interfaces	129
	11.1	REST	API	129
	11.2	SOAP	and XMLRPC API	129

12 Configuration Framework 13	31
12.1 Configuration templates	31
12.1.1 .tt2 and .customtt.tt2 files	31
12.1.2 .prebuild and .postbuild files	32
12.1.3 .services files	33
12.2 config.yml, constants.yml and network.yml files	34
12.3 ngcpcfg and its command line options	34
12.3.1 apply	34
12.3.2 build	34
12.3.3 commit	34
12.3.4 decrypt	35
12.3.5 diff	35
12.3.6 encrypt	35
12.3.7 help	35
12.3.8 initialise	35
12.3.9 pull	35
12.3.10push	35
12.3.11services	35
12.3.12status	36
13 Network Configuration 13	37
13.1 General Structure	37
13.2 Available Host Options	
14 Advanced Network Configuration 13	39
14.1 Extra SIP Sockets	39
14.2 Extra SIP and RTP Sockets	40
15 Security and Maintenance 14	42
15.1 Sipwise SSH access to sip:provider PRO	42

	15.2	Firewalling	142
	15.3	Password management	143
	15.4	SSL certificates.	144
	15.5	sip:provider PRO Backup	145
		15.5.1 What data to back up	145
		15.5.2 The built-in backup solution	145
	15.6	Recovery	146
	15.7	Reset Database	146
	15.8	Synchronize database	146
	15.9	System requirements and performance	148
	15.1	OTroubleshooting	151
16	Mon	itoring and Alerting	153
	16.1	Internal Monitoring	153
	16.2	Statistics Dashboard	153
	16.3	External Monitoring Using SNMP	153
		16.3.1 Overview and Initial Setup	153
		16.3.2 Details	154
A	Clou	Id PBX	159
	A.1	Configuring the Device Management	159
		A.1.1 Setting up Device Models	160
		A.1.2 Uploading Device Firmwares	163
		A.1.3 Creating Device Configurations	164
		A.1.4 Creating Device Profiles	166
	A.2	Preparing PBX Rewrite Rules	167
		A.2.1 Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller	168
		A.2.2 Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee	168
		A.2.3 Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller	170
	A.3	Creating Customers and Pilot Subscribers	171

	A.3.1	Creating a PBX Customer
	A.3.2	Creating a PBX Pilot Subscriber
A.4	Manag	jing a Customer PBX
	A.4.1	Creating more Subscribers
	A.4.2	Assigning Subscribers to Devices
		Synchronizing a PBX Device for initial Usage
	A.4.3	Configuring Sound Sets for the Customer PBX
		Uploading a Music-on-Hold File
		Uploading Auto-Attendant Sound Files
	A.4.4	Configuring the Auto Attendant
		Preparing the Sound Set
		Configuring the Auto Attendant Slots
		Activating the Auto Attendant
A.5	Device	Auto-Provisioning Security
	A.5.1	Server Certificate Authentication
	A.5.2	Client Certificate Authentication
A.6	Device	Bootstrap and Resync Workflows
	A.6.1	Cisco SPA Device Bootstrap
		Initial Bootstrapping
		Subsequent Device Resyncs
	A.6.2	Panasonic Device Bootstrap
		Initial Bootstrapping
		Factory Reset
		Subsequent Device Resyncs
	A.6.3	Yealink Device Bootstrap
		Initial Bootstrapping
		Factory Enable Yealink Auto-Provisioning
		Subsequent Device Resyncs

В	Sip	wise Cl	ients and Apps	206
	B.1	sip:ph	one Mobile App	206
		B.1.1	Zero Config Launcher	206
			3rd Party Sign-Up Form	207
			3rd Party Launch Handler	210
		B.1.2	Mobile Push Notification	210
			Architecture	211
			Configuring the Push Daemon	212
С	NG	CP con	figs overview	213
	C.1	config	.yml overview	213
		C.1.1	asterisk	213
		C.1.2	backuptools	214
		C.1.3	cdrexport	215
		C.1.4	checktools	216
		C.1.5	cleanuptools	217
		C.1.6	database	218
		C.1.7	faxserver	218
		C.1.8	general	219
		C.1.9	heartbeat	219
		C.1.10) intercept	220
		C.1.11	I kamailio	220
		C.1.12	2 mediator	223
		C.1.13	3 nginx	224
		C.1.14	t ntp	224
		C.1.15	5 ossbss	224
		C.1.16	pbx (only with additional cloud PBX module installed)	226
		C.1.17	⁷ prosody	226
		C.1.18	3 pushd	226

C.1.19 qos	 	
C.1.20 rate-o-mat	 	
C.1.21 redis	 	
C.1.22 reminder	 	
C.1.23 rsyslog	 	
C.1.24 rtpproxy	 	
C.1.25 security	 	
C.1.26 sems	 	
C.1.27 sshd	 	
C.1.28 voisniff	 	
C.1.29 www_admin	 	
C.1.30 www_csc	 	

1 Introduction

1.1 About this Document

This document describes the architecture and the operational steps to install, operate and modify the Sipwise sip:provider PRO.

In the various chapters, it describes the system architecture, the installation and upgrade procedures and the initial configuration steps to get your first users online. It then dives into advanced preference configurations like rewrite rules, call blockings, call forwards etc.

There is a description of the customer self-care interface, how to configure the billing system and how to provision the system via the provided APIs.

Finally it describes the internal configuration framework, the network configuration and gives hints about tweaking the system for security and performance.

1.2 Getting Help

1.2.1 Phone Support

Depending on your support contract, you are eligible to contact our Support Team by phone either in business hours or around the clock. Business hours refer to the UTC+1 time zone (Europe/Vienna). Please check your support contract to check the type of support you've purchased.

Before calling our Support Team, please also open a ticket in our Ticket System and provide as much detail as you can for us to understand the problems, fix them and investigate the root cause. Please provide the ticket number assigned to your newly created ticket when asked by our support personnel on the phone.

Phone numbers, Ticket System URL and account information can be found in your support contract. Please make this information available to the persons in your company maintaining the sip:provider PRO.

1.2.2 Ticket System

Depending on your support contract, you can create either a limited or an unlimited amount of support tickets on our Web based Ticket System. Please provide as much information as possible when opening a ticket, especially the following:

- WHAT is affected (e.g. the whole system is unreachable or customers can't register or place calls)
- WHO is affected (e.g. all customers, only parts of it, and WHICH parts only customers in a specific domain or customers with specific devices etc)
- WHEN did the problem occur (time frames, or after the firmware of specific devices types have been updated etc)

Our Support Team will ask further questions via the Ticket System along the way of troubleshooting your issue. Please provide the information as soon as possible in order to solve your issue in a timely manner.

1.3 What is the sip:provider PRO?

The sip:provider PRO is a SIP based Open Source Class5 VoIP soft-switch platform providing rich telephony services. It offers a wide range of features to end users (call forwards, voicemail, conferencing, call blocking, click-to-dial, call-lists showing near-realtime accounting information etc.), which can be configured by them using the customer-self-care web interface. For operators, it offers a fully web-based administrative panel, allowing them to configure users, peerings, billing profiles etc., as well as viewing real-time statistics of the system. For tight integration into existing infrastructures, it provides a powerful REST API.

The sip:provider PRO comes pre-installed on two servers. Apart from your product specific configuration, there is no initial configuration or installation to be done to get started.

1.4 What is inside the sip:provider PRO?

Opposed to other free VoIP software, the sip:provider PRO is not a single application, but a whole software platform, the Sipwise NGCP (Sipwise Next Generation Communication Platform), which is based on Debian GNU/Linux.

Using a highly modular design approach, the NGCP leverages popular open-source software like MySQL, NGINX, Catalyst, Kamailio, SEMS, Asterisk etc. as its core building blocks. These blocks are glued together using optimized and proven configurations and work-flows and are complemented by building blocks developed by Sipwise to provide fully-featured and easy to operate VoIP services.

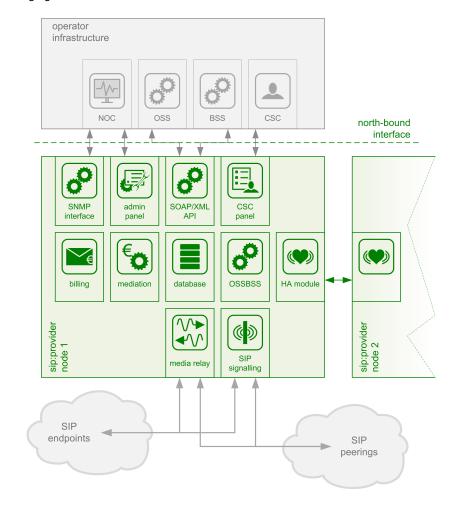
The installed applications are managed by the NGCP Configuration Framework, which allows to change system parameters in a single place, so administrators don't need to have any knowledge of the dozens of different configuration files of the different packages. This provides a very easy and bullet-proof way of operating, changing and tweaking the otherwise quite complex system.

Once configured, integrated web interfaces are provided for both end users and administrators to use the sip:provider PRO. By using the provided provisioning and billing APIs, it can be integrated tightly into existing OSS/BSS infrastructures to optimize work-flows.

1.5 Who should use the sip:provider PRO?

The sip:provider PRO is specifically tailored to companies who want to provide fully-featured SIP based VoIP service without having to go through the steep learning curve of SIP signalling, integrating the different building blocks to make them work together in a reasonable way. The sip:provider PRO is already deployed all around the world by all kinds of VoIP operators, using it as Class5 soft-switch, as Class4 termination platform or even as Session Border Controller with all kinds of access networks, like Cable, DSL, WiFi and Mobile networks.

2 Platform Architecture



The sip:provider PRO platform consists of two identical appliances working in active/standby mode. The components of a node are outlined in the following figure:

Figure 1: Architecture Overview

The main building blocks of the sip:provider PRO are:

- SIP Signaling and Media Relay
- Provisioning
- · Mediation and Billing
- Monitoring and Alerting
- High Availability and Fail-Over

2.1 SIP Signaling and Media Relay

In SIP-based communication networks, it is important to understand that the signaling path (e.g. for call setup and tear-down) is completely independent of the media path. On the signaling path, the involved endpoints negotiate the call routing (which user calls which endpoint, and via which path - e.g. using SIP peerings or going through the PSTN - the call is established) as well as the media attributes (via which IPs/ports are media streams sent and which capabilities do these streams have - e.g. video using H.261 or Fax using T.38 or plain voice using G.711). Once the negotiation on signaling level is done, the endpoints start to send their media streams via the negotiated paths.

2.1.1 SIP and Media Elements

The components involved in SIP and Media on the sip:provider PRO are shown in the following figure:

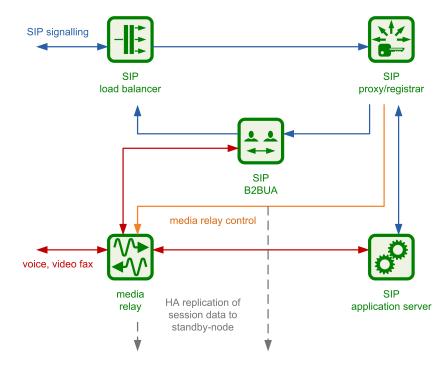


Figure 2: SIP and Media Relay Components

SIP Load-Balancer

The SIP load-balancer is a Kamailio instance acting as ingress and egress point for all SIP traffic to and from the system. It's a high-performance SIP proxy instance based on Kamailio and is responsible for sanity checks of inbound SIP traffic. It filters broken SIP messages, rejects loops and relay attempts and detects denial-of-service and brute-force attacks and gracefully handles them to protect the underlying SIP elements. It also performs the conversion of TLS to internal UDP and vice versa for secure signaling between endpoints and the sip:provider PRO, and does far-end NAT traversal in order to enable signaling through NAT devices.

The load-balancer is the only SIP element in the system which exposes a SIP interface to the public network. Its second leg binds in the switch-internal network to pass traffic from the public internet to the corresponding internal components.

The name load-balancer comes from the fact that when scaling out a sip:provider PRO beyond just one pair of servers, the load-balancer instance becomes its own physical node and then handles multiple pairs of proxies behind it.

On the public interface, the load-balancer listens on port 5060 for UDP and TCP, as well as on 5061 for TLS connections. On the internal interface, it speaks SIP via UDP on port 5060 to the other system components, and listens for XMLRPC connections on TCP port 5060, which is used by the OSSBSS system to control the daemon.

Its config files reside in /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/kamailio/lb/, and changes to these files are applied by executing ngcpcfg apply.

Тір

The SIP load-balancer can be managed via the commands monit start lb, monit stop lb and monit restart lb. Its status can be queried by executing monit summary | grep \`lb\`. Also ngcp-kamctl lb and ngcp-sercmd lb are provided for querying kamailio functions, for example: ngcp-sercmd lb htable.dump ipban.

SIP Proxy/Registrar

The SIP proxy/registrar (or short *proxy*) is the work-horse of the sip:provider PRO. It's also a separate Kamailio instance running in the switch-internal network and is connected to the provisioning database via MySQL, authenticates the endpoints, handles their registrations on the system and does the call routing based on the provisioning data. For each call, the proxy looks up the provisioned features of both the calling and the called party (either subscriber or domain features if it's a local caller and/or callee, or peering features if it's from/to an external endpoint) and acts accordingly, e.g. by checking if the call is blocked, by placing call-forwards if applicable and by normalizing numbers into the appropriate format, depending on the source and destination of a call.

It also writes start- and stop-records for each call, which are then transformed into call detail records (CDR) by the mediation system.

If the endpoints indicate negotiation of one or more media streams, the proxy also interacts with the *Media Relay* to open, change and close port pairs for relaying media streams over the sip:provider PRO, which is especially important to traverse NAT.

The proxy listens on UDP port 5062 in the system-internal network. It cannot be reached directly from the outside, but only via the SIP load-balancer.

Its config files reside in /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/kamailio/proxy/, and changes to these files are applied by executing ngcpcfg apply.

Тір

The SIP proxy can be controlled via the commands monit start proxy, monit stop proxy and monit restart proxy. Its status can be queried by executing monit summary | grep \`proxy\`. Also ngcp-kamctl proxy and ngcp-sercmd proxy are provided for querying kamailio functions, for example: ngcp-kamctl proxy ul show.

SIP Back-to-Back User-Agent (B2BUA)

The SIP B2BUA (also called SBC within the system) decouples the first call-leg (calling party to sip:provider PRO) from the second call-leg (sip:provider PRO to the called party).

The software part used for this element is a commercial version of SEMS, with the main difference to the open-source version that it includes a replication module to share its call states with the stand-by node.

This element is typically optional in SIP systems, but it is always used for SIP calls (INVITE) that don't have the sip:provider PRO as endpoint. It acts as application server for various scenarios (e.g. for feature provisioning via Vertical Service Codes and as Conferencing Server) and performs the B2BUA decoupling, topology hiding, caller information hiding, SIP header and Media feature filtering, outbound registration, outbound authentication, Prepaid accounting and call length limitation as well as Session Keep-Alive handler.

Due to the fact that typical SIP proxies (like the load-balancer and proxy in the sip:provider PRO) do only interfere with the content of SIP messages where it's necessary for the SIP routing, but otherwise leave the message intact as received from the endpoints, whereas the B2BUA creates a new call leg with a new SIP message from scratch towards the called party, SIP message sizes are reduced significantly by the B2BUA. This helps to bring the message size under 1500 bytes (which is a typical default value for the MTU size) when it leaves the sip:provider PRO. That way, chances of packet fragmentation are quite low, which reduces the risk of running into issues with low-cost SOHO routers at customer sides, which typically have problems with UDP packet fragmentation.

The SIP B2BUA only binds to the system-internal network and listens on UDP port 5080 for SIP messages from the load-balancer or the proxy, on UDP port 5040 for control messages from the cli tool and on TCP port 8090 for XMLRPC connections from the OSSBSS to control the daemon.

Its configuration files reside in /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems, and changes to these files are applied by executing ngcpcfg apply.

Tip

The SIP B2BUA can be controlled via the commands monit start sbc, monit stop sbc and monit restart sbc. Its status can be queried by executing monit summary | grep \`sbc\`

SIP App-Server

The SIP App-Server is an Asterisk instance used for voice applications like Voicemail and Reminder Calls. It is also used in the software-based Faxserver solution to transcode SIP and RTP into the IAX protocol and vice versa, in order to talk to the Software Fax Modems. Asterisk uses the MySQL database as a message spool for voicemail, so it doesn't directly access the file system for user data. The voicemail plugin is a slightly patched version based on Asterisk 1.4 to make Asterisk aware of the sip:provider PRO internal UUIDs for each subscriber. That way a SIP subscriber can have multiple E164 phone numbers, but all of them terminate in the same voicebox.

The App-Server listens on the internal interface on UDP port 5070 for SIP messages and by default uses media ports in the range from UDP port 10000 to 20000.

The configuration files reside in /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/asterisk, and changes to these files are applied by executing ngcpcfg apply.

Тір

The SIP App-Server can be controlled via the commands monit start asterisk, monit stop asterisk and monit restart asterisk. Its status can be queried by executing monit summary | grep \`asterisk\`

Media Relay

The Media Relay (also called *rtpengine*) is a Kernel-based packet relay, which is controlled by the SIP proxy. For each media stream (e.g. a voice and/or video stream), it maintains a pair of ports in the range of port number 30000 to 40000. When the media streams are negotiated, rtpengine opens the ports in user-space and starts relaying the packets to the addresses announced by the endpoints. If packets arrive from different source addresses than announced in the SDP body of the SIP message (e.g. in case of NAT), the source address is implicitly changed to the address the packets are received from. Once the call is established and the rtpengine has received media packets from both endpoints for this call, the media stream is pushed into the kernel and is then handled by a custom Sipwise iptables module to increase the throughput of the system and to reduce the latency of media packets.

The rtpengine internally listens on UDP port 12222 for control messages from the SIP proxy. For each media stream, it opens two pairs of UDP ports on the public interface in the range of 30000 and 40000 per default, one pair on odd port numbers for the media data, and one pair on the next even port numbers for meta data, e.g. RTCP in case of RTP streams. Each endpoint communicates with one dedicated port per media stream (opposed to some implementations which use one pair for both endpoints) to avoid issues in determining where to send a packet to. The rtpengine also sets the QoS/ToS/DSCP field of each IP packet it sends to a configured value, 184 (0xB8, *expedited forwarding*) by default.

The kernel-internal part of the rtpengine is facilitated through an *iptables* module having the target name RTPENGINE. If any additional firewall or packet filtering rules are installed, it is imperative that this rule remains untouched and stays in place. Otherwise, if the rule is removed from iptables, the kernel will not be able to forward the media packets and forwarding will fall back to the user-space daemon. The packets will still be forwarded normally, but performance will be much worse under those circumstances, which will be especially noticeable when a lot of media streams are active concurrently. See the section on *Firewalling* for more information.

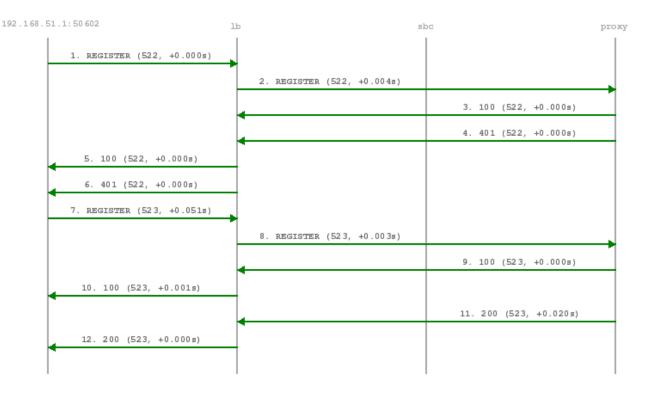
The rtpengine configuration file is /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/default/ngcp-rtpengine-daemon, and changes to this file are applied by executing ngcpcfg apply. The UDP port range can be configured via the config.yml file under the section rtpproxy. The QoS/ToS value can be changed via the key qos.tos_rtp.

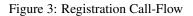
Тір

The Media Relay can be controlled via the commands monit start rtpengine, monit stop rtpengine and monit restart rtpengine. Its status can be queried by executing monit summary | grep \`rtpengine\`

2.1.2 Basic Call Flows

Endpoint Registration

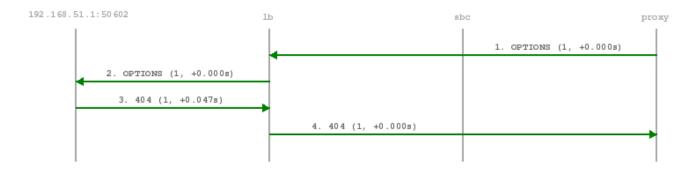




The subscriber endpoint starts sending a REGISTER request, which gets challenged by a 401. After calculating the response of the authentication challenge, it sends the REGISTER again, including the authentication response. The SIP proxy looks up the credentials of the subscriber in the database, does the same calculation, and if the result matches the one from the subscriber, the registration is granted.

The SIP proxy writes the content of the Contact header (e.g. sip:me@1.2.3.4:1234;transport=UDP) into its location table (in case of NAT the content is changed by the SIP load-balancer to the IP/port from where the request was received), so it knows where the reach a subscriber in case on an inbound call to this subscriber (e.g. sip:someuser@example.org is mapped to sip:me@1.2.3.4:1234;transport=UDP and sent out to this address).

If NAT is detected, the SIP proxy sends a OPTION message to the registered contact every 30 seconds, in order to keep the NAT binding on the NAT device open. Otherwise, for subsequent calls to this contact, the sip:provider PRO wouldn't be able to reach the endpoint behind NAT (NAT devices usually drop a UDP binding after not receiving any traffic for ~30-60 seconds).



By default, a subscriber can register 5 contacts for an Address of Record (AoR, e.g. sip:someuser@example.org).

Basic Call

1. INVITE (460, +0.000s)		•	
		2. INVITE (460, +0.001s)	
			3. 100 (460, +0.000
		4	
4	4. 100 (460, +0.000s)	_	
			5. 407 (460, +0.001
	6. 407 (460, +0.000s)		
4		-	
7. ACK (460, +0.048s)		▶	
		8. ACK (460, +0.001s)	
9. INVITE (461, +0.010s)			
		▶	
		10. INVITE (461, +0.001s)	
			11. 100 (461, +0.00
	12. 100 (461, +0.001s)		
4			
		4	13. 101 (461, +0.00)
			14. INVITE (461, +0.0
			17. 100 (461, +0.94
		18. INVITE (10, +0.141s)	
		(, TU.1710)	-
	19. INVITE (10, +0.001s)	_	
	20. 180 (10, +0.121s)		
		21. 180 (10, +0.000s)	
			▶
			22. 180 (461, +0.00)
			23. 180 (461, +0.00
	24. 180 (461, +0.000s)		
4		-	
	25. 200 (10, +10.042s)	▶	
		26. 200 (10, +0.001s)	
	27. 200 (10, +3.990s)		1
		▶	
		28. 200 (10, +0.001s)	•
			29. 200 (461, +3.37
			30. 200 (461, +0.00
		4	,,,
4	31. 200 (461, +0.000s)		
32. ACK (461, +0.107s)		•	
		33. ACK (461, +0.001s)	
			34. ACK (461, +0.00
		35. ACK (10, +0.000s)	4
	36. ACK (10, +0.000s)		
	4		
	37. BYE (1, +10.501s)	+	
		38. BYE (1, +0.002s)	•
		39. 200 (1, +0.001s)	
	40 200 (1 - 0 000-)	•	1
	40. 200 (1, +0.000s)	-	
			41. BYE (10, +0.000
			42. 100 (10, +0.000
			-
		◀	43. BYE (10, +0.004
	44. BYE (10, +0.000s)	_	
45. 200 (10, +0.053s)			
		46 200 (10 -0.000-)	
		46. 200 (10, +0.000s)	
			47. 200 (10, +0.000

The calling party sends an INVITE (e.g. sip:someuser@example.org) via the SIP load-balancer to the SIP proxy. The proxy replies with an authorization challenge in the 407 response, and the calling party sends the INVITE again with authentication credentials. The SIP proxy checks if the called party is a local user. If it is, and if there is a registered contact found for this user, then (after various feature-related tasks for both the caller and the callee) the Request-URI is replaced by the URI of the registered contact (e.g. sip:me@1.2.3.4:1234;transport=UDP). If it's not a local user but a numeric user, a proper PSTN gateway is being selected by the SIP proxy, and the Request-URI is rewritten accordingly (e.g. sip:+43123456789@ 2.3.4.5:5060).

Once the proxy has finished working through the call features of both parties involved and has selected the final destination for the call, and - optionally - has invoked the Media Relay for this call, the INVITE is sent to the SIP B2BUA. The B2BUA creates a new INVITE message from scratch (using a new Call-ID and a new From-Tag), copies only various and explicitly allowed SIP headers from the old message to the new one, filters out unwanted media capabilities from the SDP body (e.g. to force audio calls to use G.711 as a codec) and then sends the new message via the SIP load-balancer to the called party.

SIP replies from the called party are passed through the elements back to the calling party (replacing various fields on the B2BUA to match the first call leg again). If a reply with an SDP body is received by the SIP proxy (e.g. a 183 or a 200), the Media Relay is invoked again to prepare the ports for the media stream.

Once the 200 is routed from the called party to the calling party, the media stream is fully negotiated, and the endpoints can start sending traffic to each outer (either end-to-end or via the Media Relay). Upon reception of the 200, the SIP proxy writes a start record for the accounting process. The 200 is also acknowledged with an ACK message from the calling party to the called party, according to the SIP 3-way handshake.

Either of the parties can tear down the media session at any time by sending a BYE, which is passed through to the other party. Once the BYE reaches the SIP proxy, it instructs the Media Relay to close the media ports, and it writes a stop record for accounting purposes. Both the start- and the stop-records are picked up by the *mediator* service in a regular interval and are converted into a Call Detail Record (CDR), which will be rated by the *rate-o-mat* process and can be billed to the calling party. For calls made by subscribers on a prepaid plan, rating occurs at call runtime and is actually done by the B2BUA (which is necessary to properly support multiple parallel calls by the same subscriber). The final rating data is then passed on to *rate-o-mat* which will update the CDRs accordingly.

Session Keep-Alive

The SIP B2BUA acts as refresher for the Session-Timer mechanism as defined in RFC 4028. If the endpoints indicate support for the UPDATE method during call-setup, then the SIP B2BUA will use an UPDATE message if enabled per peer, domain or subscriber via Provisioning to check if the endpoints are still alive and responsive. Both endpoints can renegotiate the timer within a configurable range. All values can be tuned using the Admin Panel or the APIs using Peer-, Domain- and Subscriber-Preferences.

Тір

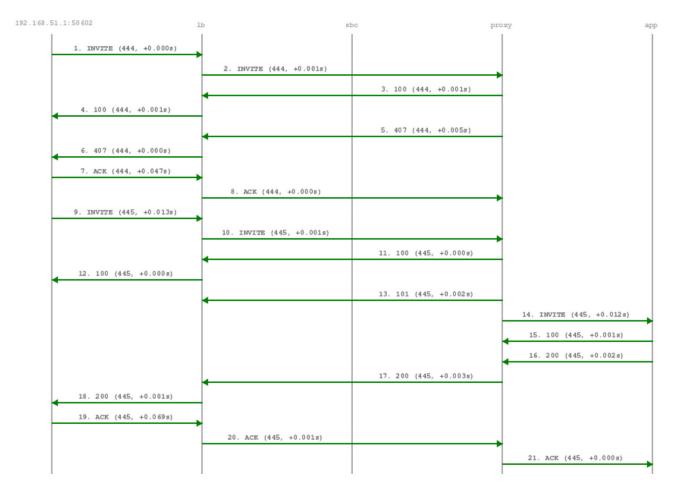
Keep in mind that the values being used in the signaling are always half the value being configured. So if you want to send a keep-alive every 300 seconds, you need to provision *sst_expires* to 600.

If one of the endpoints doesn't respond to the keep-alive messages or answers with 481 Call/Transaction Does Not Exist, then the call is torn down on both sides. This mechanism prevents excessive over-billing of calls if one of the endpoints

is not reachable anymore or "forgets" about the call. The BYE message sent by the B2BUA triggers a stop-record for accounting and also closes the media ports on the Media Relay to stop the call.

Beside the Session-Timer mechanism to prevent calls from being lost or kept open, there is a **maximum call length** of 21600 seconds per default defined in the B2BUA. This is a security/anti-fraud mechanism to prevent overly long calls causing excessive costs.

Voicebox Calls



Calls to the Voicebox (both for callers leaving a voicemail message and for voicebox owners managing it via the IVR menu) are passed directly from the SIP proxy to the App-Server without a B2BUA. The App-Server maintains its own timers, so there is no risk of over-billing or overly long calls.

In such a case where an endpoint talks via the Media Relay to a system-internal endpoint, the Media Relay bridges the media streams between the public in the system-internal network.

In case of an endpoint leaving a new message on the voicebox, the Message-Waiting-Indication (MWI) mechanism triggers the sending of a unsolicited NOTIFY message, passing the number of new messages in the body. As soon as the voicebox owner dials into his voicebox (e.g. by calling sip:voicebox@example.org from his SIP account), another NOTIFY message is sent to his devices, resetting the number of new messages.

Important

The sip:provider PRO does not require your device to subscribe to the MWI service by sending a SUBSCRIBE (it would rather reject it). On the other hand, the endpoints need to accept unsolicited NOTIFY messages (that is, a NOTIFY without a valid subscription), otherwise the MWI service will not work with these endpoints.

2.2 High Availability and Fail-Over

2.2.1 Overview

The two servers of a complete sip:provider PRO system form a pair, a simple cluster with two nodes. Their names are fixed as sp1 and +sp2, however neither of them is inherently a *first* or a *second*. They're both equal and identical and either can be the active node of the cluster at any time. Only one node is always ever active, the other one is in standby mode and doesn't perform any active functions.

High availability is achieved through constant communication between the two nodes and constant state replication from the active node to the standby one. Whenever the standby node detects that the other node has become unresponsive, has gone offline and has failed in any other way, it will proceed with taking over all resources and becoming the active node, with all operations resuming where the failed node has left off. Through that, the system will remain fully operational and service disruption will be minimal.

When the failed node comes back to life, it will become the new standby node, replicate everything that has changed in the meantime from the new active node, and then the cluster will be back in fully highly available state.

Тір

The login banner at the SSH shell provides information about whether the local system is currently the active one or the standby one. See Section 2.2.3 for other ways to differentiate between the active and the standby node.

2.2.2 Core Concepts and Configuration

The direct Ethernet crosslink between the two nodes provides the main mechanism of HA communication between them. All state replication happens over this link. Additionally, the HA daemon *heartbeat* uses this link to communicate with the other node to see if it's still alive and active. A break in this link will therefore result in a *split brain* scenario, with either node trying to become the active one. This is to be avoided at all costs.

The config.yml file allows specification of a list of *ping nodes* under the key heartbeat.pingnodes, which are used by *heartbeat* to determine if local network communications are healthy. Both servers will then constantly compare the number of locally reachable ping nodes with each other, and if the standby server is able to reach more of them, then it will become the active one.

The main resource that *heartbeat* manages is the shared service IP address. Each node has its own static IP address configured on its first Ethernet interface (eth0), which is done outside of the sip:provider PRO configuration framework (i.e. in the Debianspecific config file /etc/network/interfaces). The shared service IP is specified in network.yml at the key hosts. sp1|sp2.eth0.shared_ip. *Heartbeat* will configure it as a secondary IP address on the first Ethernet interface (eth0:0) on the active node and will deconfigure it on the standby node. Thus, all network communications with this IP address will always go only to the currently active node.

2.2.3 Administration

The current status of the local sip:provider PRO node can be determined using the ngcp-check_active shell command. This command produces no output, but returns an exit status of *0* for the active node and *1* for the standby node. A more complete shell command to produce visible output could be: ngcp-check_active && echo active || echo standby

To force a currently active node into standby mode, use the command /usr/lib64/heartbeat/hb_standby. For the opposite effect, use the command /usr/lib64/heartbeat/hb_takeover. This will also always affect the state of the other node, as the system automatically makes sure that always only one node is active at a time.

2.3 Fax Server Architecture

The Fax Server comes in two flavors:

- The software-based Fax Server (included in the sip:provider PRO)
- The hardware-based Fax Server (optional module for the sip:provider PRO)

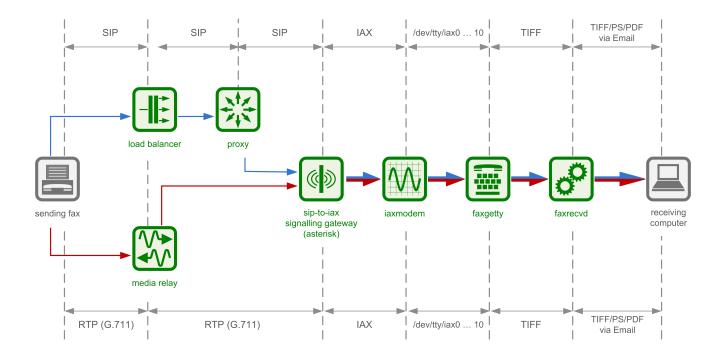
The following chapters describe the architectures of the two approaches and its pros and cons.

2.3.1 Software-Based Fax Server

The software-based Fax Server is included on the platform and requires no additional hardware. That way, one can provide a cost-effective paper-free office solution with the sip:provider PRO. The drawback is that the software-based solution only supports G.711 (no T.38 Fax-over-IP), so it is very dependent on the internet connection quality of the involved endpoints, because G.711 based solutions are prone to packet-loss on the IP level.

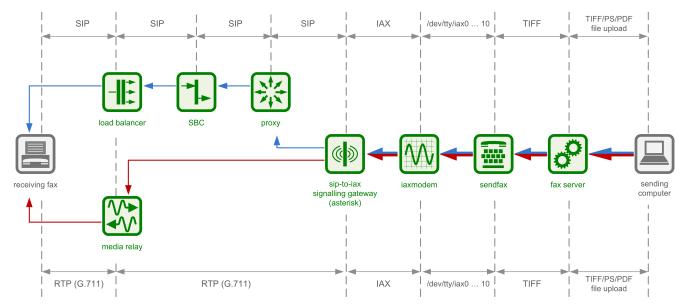
Fax2Mail Architecture

In order to receive faxes via email, a phone call is connected from the sender to the software fax modem on the sip:provider PRO via the elements outlined in the picture below, where the received fax document is converted to the format the receiver has configured (either PS, PDF or TIFF). The email is delivered to one or more configured addresses.



Sendfax Architecture

To send faxes via the sip:provider PRO, the sender needs a hylafax-compliant software client or printer driver (e.g. jhylafax). When sending a document (either TXT, PS or PDF) from the client or directly via the hylafax printer driver, the document is uploaded to the Faxserver instance on the sip:provider PRO via the Hylafax protocol (an FTP-like transport protocol). The document is converted to a suitable internal TIF format and is sent via the components outlined in the picture below to the specified phone number, where a normal fax device can receive the document.



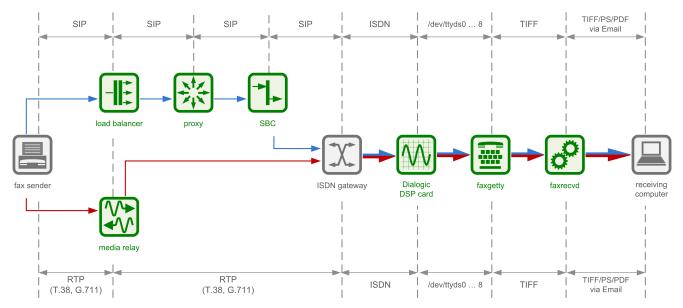
2.3.2 Hardware-Based Fax Server

Compared to the software-based Fax Server, the hardware-based Fax Server requires additional hardware components, namely a Dialogic DSP card for transcoding fax documents to ISDN and vice versa, as well as ISDN gateways to transcode ISDN to SIP

and RTP or T.38 and vice versa. The cons of the additional costs are outweighed by the pros of T.38 support, which is more resilient against packet loss on IP level, and more reliable fax transmission due to dedicated and specialized hardware.

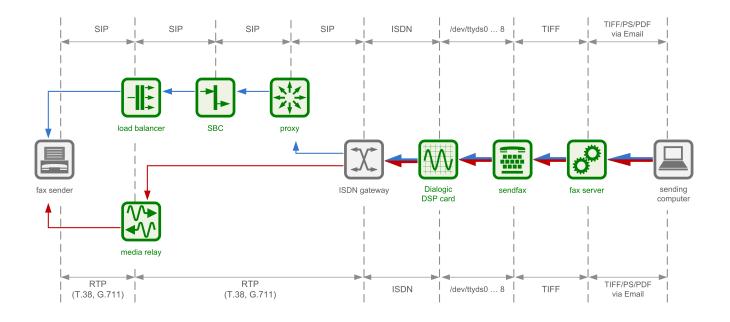
Fax2Mail Architecture

In order to receive faxes via email, a phone call is connected from the sender to the internal ISDN gateway, which converts the call to a pure ISDN call. The ISDN call is transmitted via a local loop to the DSP card, which in hardware receives and prepares the fax document. This document is then passed on to the fax receiving element which converts it to the final format the customer configured, before it's been sent out via email.



Sendfax Architecture

In the same way as the software-based Fax Server, but leveraging the hardware components, a fax document is uploaded to the sip:provider PRO and transmitted to the dialed phone number, where the data is delivered to via G.711 or T.38 and is received on the other end as Class1 or Class2 fax.



3 Upgrading the sip:provider PRO

3.1 Preparation

Make sure you're prepared to spend two hours or so upgrading the system. There will be service interruptions, so also notify the customer and get their approval.

Check the system for locally modified files (move them to appropriate customtt.tt2 files if necessary):

```
ngcp-status --integrity
```

Try to find local changes to the template files by issuing:

```
find /etc/ngcp-config -name \*customtt.tt2
```

You will also need to find the dpkg-dist files under the templates files because people sometimes forget about creating customtt files and edit tt2 files directly. That makes upgrades not to replace the tt2 files. If so, you need to treat the tt2 files as if they were customtt files and make sure you merge the new templates with the changes of the old ones.

find /etc/ngcp-config -name *.tt2.dpkg-dist

Also, please check/clean old dpkg backup files (just in case if previous person did the previous step not carefully enough). Normally the list should be empty:

find /etc/ngcp-config -name *.tt2.dpkg*

You will have to understand why the changes are there and if they are still needed after the upgrade. You should create a ticket in the bugtracker if there isn't one yet.

Log into the two servers. Use their real IPs so you can switch the cluster forth and back later on. Make sure the cluster status is ok - on **both** nodes issue:

- monit summary one should be running all services, the other all but rtpengine, lb, proxy, sbc, mediator and rate-o-mat
- · cl_status rscstatus one (with all services running) should print "all", the other "none"
- mysql -e "show slave status\G" look for the following:

```
Slave_IO_Running: Yes
Slave_SQL_Running: Yes
Seconds_Behind_Master: 0
```

- · ngcpcfg status should print OK three times
- ngcp-collective-check should not report any problems.

A cluster fail-over could be a good idea to see if everything works on the second node too. On the standby node issue:

/usr/share/heartbeat/hb_takeover

Afterwards again check monit, cl_status and ngcp-collective-check.

Create two test subscribers, or retrieve the credentials for two of them. Register a client to the platform and perform a test call between the two to ensure call routing works.

Run "apt-get update", ensure you have no warnings/errors here.

Warning

Installation may use locally specified mirrors. Discuss with a customer possibility to switch on Sipwise APT repositories (at least for the time of upgrades), the public Debian mirrors may not provide packages for old Releases anymore or be at least outdated!

To switch on Sipwise APT repositories, execute the following commands as root:

```
echo "# Please visit /etc/apt/sources.list.d/ instead." > /etc/apt/sources.list
mkdir -p /etc/apt/sources.list.d
for file in /etc/apt/sources.list.d/*.list ; do mv "${file}" "${file}.DISABLED" ; done
NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION=$(cat /etc/ngcp_version)
cat > /etc/apt/sources.list.d/debian.list << EOF</pre>
## custom sources.list, deployed via upgrade ${NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION}->mr3.8.11
# Debian repositories
deb http://debian.sipwise.com/debian/ wheezy main contrib non-free
#deb-src http://debian.sipwise.com/debian/ wheezy main contrib non-free
deb http://debian.sipwise.com/debian-security/ wheezy-security main contrib non-free
#deb-src http://debian.sipwise.com/debian-security/ wheezy-security main contrib non-free
deb http://debian.sipwise.com/debian/ wheezy-updates main contrib non-free
#deb-src http://debian.sipwise.com/debian/ wheezy-updates main contrib non-free
EOF
NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION=$ (cat /etc/ngcp_version)
cat > /etc/apt/sources.list.d/sipwise.list << EOF</pre>
# NGCP_MANAGED_FILE - do not remove this line if it should be automatically handled
# deployed via upgrade ${NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION}->mr3.8.11
# Sipwise repository
deb http://deb.sipwise.com/sppro/${NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION}/ wheezy main
#deb-src http://deb.sipwise.com/sppro/${NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION}/ wheezy main
EOF
```

Run "apt-get update" once again and ensure you have no warnings/errors here.

3.2 Upgrade from previous release

Note

Make sure you have finished with general Section 3.1 before continue.

The sip:provider PRO system upgrade to mr3.8.11 will perform a couple of fundamental tasks:

- · Update DB schema
- · Upgrade yml config schema

So assuming you have a running sip:provider PRO system and want to upgrade it, start on the inactive node by upgrading software, then take over from the other node and then upgrade the other (now inactive) node, as detailed in the steps below.

1. Switch to new repositories

For upgrading the sip:provider PRO to the latest mr3.8.11 release, execute the following commands on both nodes:

```
NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION=$(cat /etc/ngcp_version)
sed -i "s/$NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION/mr3.8.11/" /etc/apt/sources.list.d/sipwise.list
apt-get update
apt-get install ngcp-upgrade-mr3.8.11-pro
```

2. Execute ngcp-upgrade in inactive node.

```
ngcp-upgrade
```

Note

If there is an error during DB schema update, the ngcp-upgrade script will request you to solve it. Once you've fixed the problem just re-execute ngcp-upgrade again. When all finishes successfully check that replication is running.

3. Merge/add the custom configuration templates if needed. Apply the changes to configuration templates if any and send them to the shared storage and the other node:

```
ngcpcfg apply
ngcpcfg push --nobuild --noapply
```

4. Promote inactive node to active.

/usr/share/heartbeat/hb_takeover

5. Go to the new inactive node. Run ngcp-upgrade.

ngcp-upgrade

When all finishes successfully check that replication is running. Check monit summary, ngcpcfg status and ngcp-collective-check. Finally, do a basic functionality test. Check web interface, register two test subscribers and perform a test call between the two to ensure call routing works.

Note

You can find a backup of some important configuration files of your existing installation under /var/backup/ngcp-mr3.8.11-(where * is a place holder for a timestamp) in case you need to roll back something at any time. A log file of the upgrade procedure is available at /var/backup/ngcp-mr3.8.11-/upgrade.log.

3.3 Upgrade from 2.8 LTS

Note

Make sure you have finished with general Section 3.1 before continue.

The system upgrade from sip:provider PRO 2.8 LTS to mr3.8.11 will perform a couple of fundamental tasks:

- · Verify APT source lists
- Upgrade Debian from 6.0 to 7.0
- · Update DB schema
- · Upgrade yml config schema

Run "apt-get update", ensure you have no warnings/errors here.



Warning

Installation may use locally specified mirrors. Discuss with a customer switching on Sipwise APT repositories. All public Debian mirrors do not provide squeeze packages anymore!

To switch on Sipwise APT repositories, execute the following commands as root:

```
echo "# Please visit /etc/apt/sources.list.d/ instead." > /etc/apt/sources.list
mkdir -p /etc/apt/sources.list.d
for file in /etc/apt/sources.list.d/*.list ; do mv "${file}" "${file}.DISABLED" ; done
NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION=$(cat /etc/ngcp_version)
cat > /etc/apt/sources.list.d/debian.list << EOF</pre>
## custom sources.list, deployed via upgrade ${NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION}->mr3.8.11
#
# Debian repositories
deb http://debian.sipwise.com/debian/ squeeze main contrib non-free
#deb-src http://debian.sipwise.com/debian/ squeeze main contrib non-free
#
deb http://debian.sipwise.com/debian-security/ squeeze-security main contrib non-free
#deb-src http://debian.sipwise.com/debian-security/ squeeze-security main contrib non-free
deb http://debian.sipwise.com/debian/ squeeze-updates main contrib non-free
#deb-src http://debian.sipwise.com/debian/ squeeze-updates main contrib non-free
EOF
NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION=$(cat /etc/ngcp_version)
cat > /etc/apt/sources.list.d/sipwise.list << EOF</pre>
```

```
# NGCP_MANAGED_FILE - do not remove this line if it should be automatically handled
# deployed via upgrade ${NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION}->mr3.8.11
#
# Sipwise repository
deb http://deb.sipwise.com/sppro/${NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION}/ squeeze main
#deb-src http://deb.sipwise.com/sppro/${NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION}/ squeeze main
# Sipwise squeeze backports
deb http://deb.sipwise.com/squeeze-backports/ squeeze-backports main
#deb-src http://deb.sipwise.com/squeeze-backports/ squeeze-backports main
#
# Debian's squeeze-lts, using Sipwise' mirror
deb http://debian.sipwise.com/debian/ squeeze-lts main
#deb-src http://debian.sipwise.com/debian/ squeeze-lts main
# Percona's high performance mysql builds
deb http://deb.sipwise.com/percona/ squeeze main
#deb-src http://deb.sipwise.com/percona/ squeeze main
EOF
```

Run "apt-get update" once again and ensure you have no warnings/errors here.

Warning

be sure you are using the latest 2.8 LTS version before upgrading to mr3.8.11 LTS version. mr3.8.11 LTS version uses new repository GPG key which should be installed in 2.8 LTS version before further upgrade to mr3.8.11 LTS version. For upgrading the 2.8 LTS version to the latest 2.8 packages version, execute the following commands as *root* (on **both** nodes, using switchover and executing commands on **inactive** pair):

```
ngcpcfg pull && apt-get update && apt-get upgrade && \
ngcp-update-db-schema && ngcp-update-cfg-schema && \
ngcpcfg apply && ngcpcfg push --nobuild --noapply
```

Note

re-check you have all the latest packages installed (ensure you have 0 everywhere below):

```
> apt-get upgrade
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree
Reading state information... Done
0 upgraded, 0 newly installed, 0 to remove and 0 not upgraded.
```

So assuming you have a running the latest sip:provider PRO 2.8 LTS system and want to upgrade it, start on the inactive node by upgrading software, then take over from the other node and then upgrade the other (now inactive) node, as detailed in the steps below.

1. Switch to new repositories

For upgrading the sip:provider PRO from 2.8 LTS to the latest mr3.8.11 release, execute the following commands on **both** nodes:

```
NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION=$(cat /etc/ngcp_version)
sed -i "s/$NGCP_CURRENT_VERSION/mr3.8.11/" /etc/apt/sources.list.d/sipwise.list
sed -i '/squeeze-lts/d' /etc/apt/sources.list.d/sipwise.list
sed -i 's/squeeze/wheezy/g' /etc/apt/sources.list.d/sipwise.list
apt-get update
apt-get install ngcp-upgrade-mr3.8.11-pro
```

2. Execute ngcp-upgrade in inactive node.

ngcp-upgrade

Note

If there is an error during DB schema update, the ngcp-upgrade script will request you to solve it. Once you've fixed the problem just re-execute ngcp-upgrade again. When all finishes successfully check that replication is running.

3. Merge/add the custom configuration templates if needed. Apply the changes to configuration templates if any and send them to the shared storage and the other node:

```
ngcpcfg apply
ngcpcfg push --nobuild --noapply
```

4. Promote inactive node to active.

/usr/lib64/heartbeat/hb_takeover

5. Go to the new inactive node. Run ngcp-upgrade.

ngcp-upgrade

When all finishes successfully check that replication is running. Check monit summary, ngcpcfg status and ngcp-collective-check. Finally, do a basic functionality test. Check web interface, register two test subscribers and perform a test call between the two to ensure call routing works.

Note

You can find a backup of some important configuration files of your existing 2.8 LTS installation under /var/backup/ngcpmr3.8.11- (where * is a place holder for a timestamp) in case you need to roll back something at any time. A log file of the upgrade procedure is available at /var/backup/ngcp-mr3.8.11-/upgrade.log.

Note

mr3.8.11 LTS release has several major changes comparing to previous 2.8 LTS release:

- 1. Upgrade Debian from 6.0 to 7.0
- 2. sip:provider PRO mr3.8.11 requires at least 2GB of RAM available as the minimum requirements for new WEB interface, otherwise certain features won't work and you will run into arbitrary issues.
- 3. Migrated from SOAP to REST API. SOAP API is disabled by default after upgrade and will be completely removed in mr4.0+
- 4. Migrated from Apache to Nginx. Apache and related packages will NOT be deleted during upgrade. However it is highly recommended to migrate customer specific VirtualHosts (if any) from Apache to Nginx and remove Apache and related packages from sip:provider PRO system after upgrade manually. You can use the following command as *root* (on **both** nodes):

apt-get purge apache2.2-common apache2-utils apache2.2-bin && apt-get autoremove

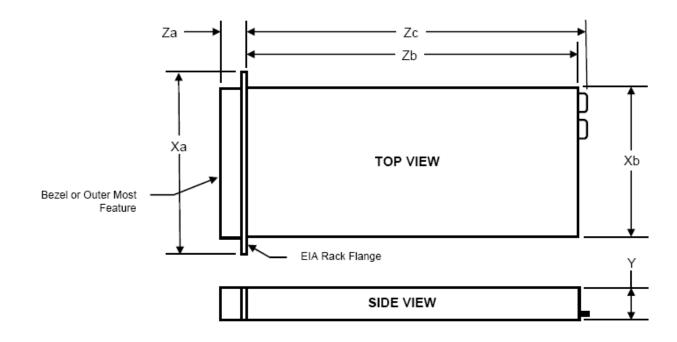
4 Installation

The following chapter will provide the step by step instructions on how to put the sip:provider PRO into operations.

4.1 Hardware Specifications

4.1.1 Dimensions and Weight

The sip:provider PRO ships fully pre-installed on two servers. The hardware dimensions and weight is defined in the following figure:



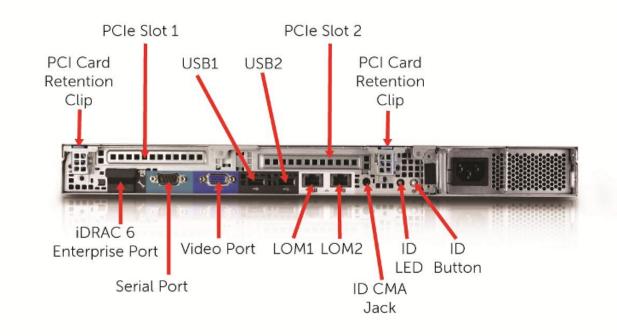
Ха	Xb (Width)	Y (Height)	Za w/ bezel	Za w/o bezel	Zb (Depth)	Zc
482.4mm	434mm	42.4mm	35mm	21mm	612.6mm	641.9mm

Weight: 15kg

4.1.2 Front View



4.1.3 Back View





The redundant PSUs include LEDs which indicate the status of the PSU:

- Not lit: AC power is not connected.
- Green: In standby mode, a green light indicates that a valid AC source is connected to the power supply and that the power supply is operational. When the system is on, a green light also indicates that the power supply is providing DC power to the system.
- Amber: Indicates a problem with the power supply.
- Alternating green and amber: When hot-adding a power supply, this indicates that the power supply is mismatched with the other power supply (a high output power supply and an Energy Smart power supply are installed in the same system). The power supply that has the flashing indicator needs to be replaced with the same model as the other power supply.

4.2 Installation Prerequisites

In order to put the sip:provider PRO into operations, you need to rack-mount it into 19" racks.

What you will find in the box is the following equipment:

- 2 servers
- · 2 pairs of rails to rack-mount the servers
- 4 power cables with C13 jacks

What you will additionally need and what is not part of the shipment is the following parts:

- · 2 CAT5 cables to connect the servers to the access switches for external communication
- 1 CAT5 cable to directly connect the two servers for internal communication

4.3 Rack-Mount Installation

Install the two servers into the rack (either into a single one or into two geographically distributed ones). The rails shipped with the servers should fit into standard 4-Post 19" racks. If it does not fit, please consult your rack vendor to get proper rails.

The following figure shows the mounted rails. Please note that the cable management arm on the top right is NOT included.



4.4 Power Supply Cabling

Each server has two redundant Power Supply Units (PSU). Connect one PSU to your normal power circuit and the other one to an Uninterruptible Power Supply Unit (UPS) to gain the maximum protection against power failures.

The cabling should look like in the following picture to prevent accidental power cuts:



4.5 Network Cabling

For each of the two servers, connect a straight CAT5 cable to the first network interface and hook it up to the corresponding access switch port.

Then patch a cross-link with another straight CAT5 cable between the two servers by connecting the cable to the second network interface. The direct cross cable is used for maximum availability, because this connection is used by the servers to communicate with each other internally. Only use a switch in between if there is no other way to connect the two ports (e.g. if it's geographically distributed).

In case you are using a switch for cross-link make sure to enable **portfast** mode on Cisco switches. The thing is that STP puts the port into learning mode for 90 seconds after it comes up for the first time. During this learning phase, the link is technically up, but no traffic passes through, so heartbeat will detect other node as dead during boot. Portfast tells the switch to skip the learning phase and go to forwarding state right away: spanning-tree portfast [trunk].

5 Administrative Configuration

To be able to configure your first test clients, you will need a Customer, a SIP domain and some subscribers in this domain. Throughout this steps, let's assume you're running the NGCP on the IP address *1.2.3.4*, and you want this IP to be used as SIP domain. This means that your subscribers will have an URI like *user1@1.2.3.4*.

Тір

You can of course set up a DNS name for your IP address (e.g. letting sip.yourdomain.com point to 1.2.3.4) and use this DNS name throughout the next steps, but we'll keep it simple and stick directly with the IP as a SIP domain for now.



Warning

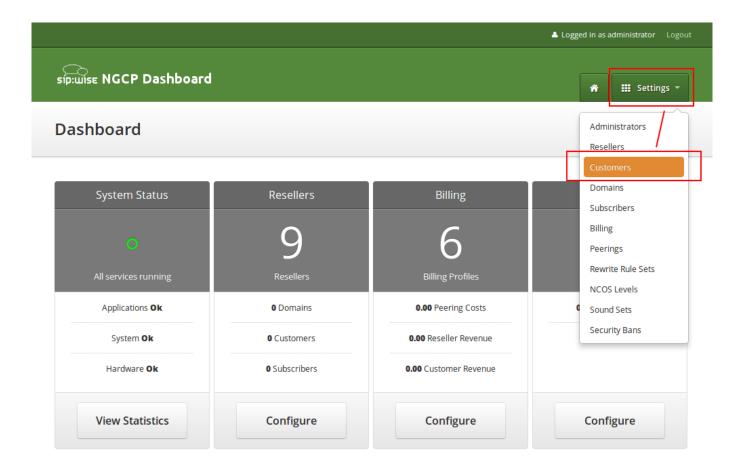
Once you started adding subscribers to a SIP domain, and later decide to change the domain, e.g. from 1.2.3.4 to sip.yourdomain.com, you'll need to recreate all your subscribers in this new domain. It's currently not possible to easily change the domain part of a subscriber.

Go to the *Administrative Web Panel* (*Admin Panel*) running on *https://<ce-ip>:1443/login/admin* and follow the steps below. The default user on the system is *administrator* with the password *administrator*, if you haven't changed it already.

5.1 Creating a Customer

A Customer is a special type of contract on the system acting as billing container for SIP subscribers. You can create as many SIP subscribers within a Customer as you want.

To create a Customer, got to Settings \rightarrow Customers.



Click on Create Customer.

			🛓 Logg	ged in as administrator Logout
sip:wise NGCP Dashboar	d			🔒 🏭 Settings 👻
Customers				
← Back ← Create Cus	tomer		Search:	
, # ≜ External #	Reseller	Contact Email	Billing Profile	Status
No data available in table				
Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries				$\Leftarrow \leftarrow \rightarrow \Rightarrow$
© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserve	ed.			

Each *Customer* needs a *Contact*. We can either reuse the default one, but for a clean setup, we create a new *Contact* for each *Customer* to be able to identify the *Customer*. Click on *Create Contact* to create a new *Contact*.

						💄 Logged in as adm	inistrat	or Logout
sip:wise								
·	Create Contract						×	tings 🔻
Contr	Contact				Searc	:h:		-
		#	Reseller	First Name	Last Name	Email		
		1	default	Contact first name	Contact last name	default- customer@default.invalid.contact		
+ Back		Showing 1	to 1 of 1 entries			⇐ ← 1 → ⊐		
						Create Contact		
# ^	Billing Profile				Searc	:h:		
No data a		#		Reseller		Profile		
		1		default		Default Billing Profile		
Showing 01		Showing 1	to 1 of 1 entries					
						Create Billing Profile		
© 2013 Sip						Sa	/e	

We assign the Contact to the default *Reseller*. You can create a new one if you want, but for a simple setup the default *Reseller* is sufficient. Select the *Reseller* and enter the contact details (at least an *Email* is required), then press *Save*.

					💄 Logged i	n as administrator Logout
<u></u>						
síp:wíse Cr	eate Contact					× tings -
Conta	Reseller			Search:		
		#	Name	Contract #	Status	
		1	default	1	active 1	
← Back		Showing 1 to 1	of 1 entries		← ← 1	→ ⇒
					Create R	
# -	First Name					
1	Last Name					
Showing 11	2 Email	myfirstcontac	t@example.org			
Showing Th	Company					
© 2013 Sip	men, annana reservea.				3	Save

You will be redirected back to the *Contract* form. The newly created *Contact* is selected by default now, so you only have to select a *Billing Profile*. Again you can create a new one on the fly, but we will go with the default profile for now. Select it and press *Save*.

You will now see your first Customer in the list. Hover over the customer and click Details to view the details.

				Logged in as administrator Logout				
sip:wise NGCP Dashboard				者 🗮 Settings 👻				
Customers								
← Back ★ Create Custo Contract successfully created								
			2	Search:				
# 🔺 External # Reseller	Contact Email	Billing Profile	Status					
20 default	myfirstcontact@example.org	Default Billing Profile	active	I Edit X Terminate I ≣ Details				
Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries				\leftarrow 1 \rightarrow \Rightarrow				

5.2 Creating a Subscriber

In your Customer details view, click on the Subscribers row, then click the Create Subscriber.

			🚢 Logged in as	administrator Logout
	sip:wise NGCP Dashl	board	A	III Settings 👻
	Customer Detai	ls		
	← Back			
	Reseller			
	Contact Details			
	Billing Profiles			
1	Subscribers			
-	★ Create Subscrib	per 2		
	SIP URI	Primary Number	Registered Devices	
	Contract Balance			

As you can see, we don't have any SIP Domains yet, so click on Create Domain to create one.

síp:wise	Create Sub	scriber						× tings •
Custo	Web	Jsername						
	Web	Password						
← Back	E16	4 Number						
Reseller	SIP	Jsername						
Contact	1	Domain			Search:	[ו ביו
Billing			#	Reseller	C	Domain		
Subscri			No data available in table					
			Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries			⇐	$\leftarrow \rightarrow \Rightarrow$	
*0						2	Create Domain	
SIP UF						- [1	Create Domain	
							Sav	
Contrac		_	_	_	_	_		

Select the *Reseller* (make sure to use the same reseller where your *Customer* is created in) and enter your domain name, then press *Save*.

						🛎 Logged in a	as administrator Logout
sip:wise		Domain					× tings -
Doma		Reseller			Search:		
			#	Name	Contract #	Status	
			1	default	1	active 1	
← Back			Showing 1 to 1 of 1 er	ntries		← ← 1 Create F	→ ⇒ Reseller
# No data a	2	SIP Domain	1.2.3.4				
Showing 01						3	Save a
© 2013 Sipv	wise GmbH , a	ll rights reserved.					

Your *Domain* will be preselected now, so fill out the rest of the form:

• Web Username: This is the user part of the username the subscriber may use to log into her *Customer Self Care Interface*. The user part will be automatically suffixed by the SIP domain you choose for the **SIP URI**. Usually the web username is identical to the **SIP URI**, but you may choose a different naming schema.



Caution

The web username needs to be unique. The system will return a fault if you try to use the same web username twice.

- Web Password: This is the password for the subscriber to log into her *Customer Self Care Interface*. It must be at least 6 characters long.
- E164 Number: This is the telephone number mapped to the subscriber, separated into *Country Code (CC)*, *Area Code (AC)* and *Subscriber Number (SN)*. For the first tests, you can set a made-up number here and change it later when you get number blocks assigned by your PSTN interconnect partner. So in our example, we'll use 43 as CC, 99 as AC and 1001 as SN to form the phantasy number +43 99 1001.

Тір

This number can actually be used to place calls between local subscribers, even if you don't have any PSTN interconnection. This comes in handy if you use phones instead of soft-clients for your tests. The format in which this number can be dialled so the subscriber is reached is defined in Section 5.6.

Important

NGCP allows single subscriber to have multiple E.164 numbers to be used as aliases for receiving incoming calls. Also NGCP supports "implicit" extensions, e.g. if a subscriber has number 012345, but somebody calls 012345100, then it first tries to send the call to number 012345100 (even though the user is registered as myusername), and only after 404 it falls back to the user-part for which the user is registered.

- SIP Username: The user part of the SIP URI for your subscriber.
- SIP Domain: The domain part of the SIP URI for your subscriber.
- SIP Password: The password of your subscriber to authenticate on the SIP proxy. It must be at least 6 characters long.
- Status: You can lock a subscriber here, but for creating one, you will most certainly want to use active.
- External ID: You can provision an arbitrary string here (e.g. an ID of a 3rd party provisioning/billing system).
- Administrative: If you have multiple subscribers in one account and set this option for one of them, this subscriber can administrate other subscribers via the *Customer Self Care Interface*.

		Dashboard				ñ	III Settings
usto	Create	Subscriber					×
		Web Password					
Back	1	E164 Number	43 99	1001			
nain suc	2	SIP Username	testuser1				
Reseller		Domain			Search:		
tesener			#	Reseller	Domain		
Contact			6	default	1.2.3.4	3 🗹	0
Billing I Subscri			Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries		⇐ ← 1	→	→
Subscri					Crea	ate Dom	ain
★ (4	SIP Password	mysecretpassword				
SIP UF					:	5	Save

Repeat the creation of *Customers* and *Subscribers* for all your test accounts. You should have at least 3 subscribers to test all the functionality of the NGCP.

42 / 236

Тір

At this point, you're able to register your subscribers to the NGCP and place calls between these subscribers.

You should now revise the Domain and Subscriber Preferences.

5.3 Domain Preferences

The *Domain Preferences* are the default settings for *Subscriber Preferences*, so you should set proper values there if you don't want to configure each subscriber separately. You can later override these settings in the *Subscriber Preferences* if particular subscribers need special settings.

To configure your *Domain Preferences*, go to *Settings* \rightarrow *Domains* and click on the *Preferences* button of the domain you want to configure.

sip:wise N	IGCP Dashboard		▲ Logged in as administrator Logout
Domai	ns		
← Back	★ Create Domain		Search:
#	* Reseller	Domain	
6	default	1.2.3.4	Delete Freferences
Showing 1 to 1	1 of 1 entries		$\Leftarrow \leftarrow 1 \rightarrow \Rightarrow$
© 2013 Sipwis	se GmbH, all rights reserved.		

The most important settings are in the group *Number Manipulations*, where you can configure where from a SIP message to take numbers from for incoming messages, where in the SIP messages to put which numbers for outgoing SIP messages, and how these numbers are normalized to E164 format and vice versa.

To assign a *Rewrite Rule Set* to a *Domain*, create a set first as described in Section 5.6, then assign it to the domain by editing the *rewrite_rule_set* preference.

Domain "1.2.3.4" – Preferences

	← Back	Back						
	Call Blo							
	Access F	lestrictions						
1	Number	Manipulations						
		Name	Value					
	0	rewrite_rule_set	•	2 G Edit				
	0	extension_in_npn						
	0	inbound_upn	From-Username					
	0	outbound_from_user	User-Provided-Number •					
	0	outbound_from_display	None					

Select the *Rewrite Rule Set* and press *Save*.

< si	p:wise	Edit Preference rewrite_ru	le_set	× tings -						
D	oma	1 rewrite_rule_set test								
÷	Back			2 Save						
	Call Blo	all Blockings								
	Access R	ess Restrictions								
	Number	Manipulations								
	0	rewrite_rule_set								
	0	extension_in_npn								
	0	inbound_upn	From-Username							

Then, select the field you want the *User Provided Number* to be taken from for inbound INVITE messages. Usually the *From-Username* should be fine, but you can also take it from the *Display-Name* of the From-Header, and other options are available as well.

5.4 Subscriber Preferences

You can override the *Domain Preferences* on a subscriber basis as well. Also, there are *Subscriber Preferences* which don't have a default value in the *Domain Preferences*.

To configure your *Subscriber*, go to *Settings* \rightarrow *Subscribers* and click *Details* on the row of your subscriber. There, click on the *Preferences* button on top.

You want to look into the *Number Manipulations* and *Access Restrictions* options in particular, which control what is used as user-provided and network-provided calling numbers.

- For outgoing calls, you may define multiple numbers or patterns to control what a subscriber is allowed to send as user-provided calling numbers using the *allowed_clis* preference.
- If *allowed_clis* does not match the number sent by the subscriber, then the number configured in *cli* (the network-provided number) preference will be used as user-provided calling number also.
- You can override any user-provided number coming from the subscriber using the user_cli preference.

5.5 Creating Peerings

If you want to terminate calls at or allow calls from 3^{rd} party systems (e.g. PSTN gateways, SIP trunks), you need to create SIP peerings for that. To do so, go to *Settings* \rightarrow *Peerings*. There you can add peering groups, and for each peering group add peering servers and rules controlling which calls are routed over these groups. Every peering group needs a peering contract for correct interconnection billing.

5.5.1 Creating Peering Groups

Click on Create Peering Group to create a new group.

In order to create a group, you must select a peering contract. You will most likely want to create one contract per peering group.

					Logged in as administration	ator Logout
sip:wise	Create SIP Peering G	iroups			×	tings 👻
SIP Pe	Contract			Search:		
		#	Status	Billing Profile		
		No data available in table				
🗲 Back		Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries			$\Leftarrow \leftarrow \rightarrow \Rightarrow \Rightarrow \qquad$	
					Create Contract	
#	Name					
No data a	Priority	1			T	
Showing 01	Description					\rightarrow
					Save	
© 2013 Sipv	vise GmbH, all rights reserved.					

Click on Create Contract create a Contact, then select a Billing Profile.

síp:ωise	Create Contract						× tings -
Contr	Contact				Sear	ch: [
_		#	Reseller	First Name	Last Name	Email	
		1	default	Contact first name	Contact last name	default- 1.1 customer@default.invalid.contact	0
🗲 Back		17	default			myfirstcontact@example.org	
		Showing	1 to 2 of 2 entries			\leftarrow \leftarrow 1 \rightarrow = or 1.2 Create Contact	
# ^							
21	Billing Profile				Sear	ch:	
		#		Reseller		Profile	
Showing 1 t		1		default		Default Billing Profile 2	-
		Showing	1 to 1 of 1 entries				⇒
© 2013 Sip	nac aman, ann gna reachtear					3 Sa	ive

Click *Save* on the *Contacts* form, and you will get redirected back to the form for creating the actual *Peering Group*. Put a name, priority and description there, for example:

- Peering Contract: select the id of the contract created before
- Name: test group
- Priority: 1
- **Description:** peering to a test carrier

							Logged in as administrator Logout
sip:wise Cre	eate S	SIP P	eering (Groups			× tings -
SIP Pe		(Contract			Search:	
				#	Status	Billing Profile	
				21	active	Default Billing Profile	1
← Back				Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entri	es	•	
							Create Contract
#		2	Name	test group			
No data a		3	Priority	1			
Showing 0 t	4	Des	scription	peering to a test carr	ier		→ =
							Save
© 2013 Sipwise G	imbH, all	rights	reserved.				

The *Priority* option defines which *Peering Group* to favor if two peering groups have peering rules matching an outbound call. *Peering Rules* are described below.

Then click Save to create the group.

5.5.2 Creating Peering Servers

In the group created before, you need to add peering servers to route calls to and receive calls from. To do so, click on *Details* on the row of your new group in your peering group list.

To add your first *Peering Server*, click on the *Create Peering Server* button.

Peering Servers	Create Peering Se	rver 1					
# 🔶 Name	IP Address	Hostname	Port	Protocol	Weight	Via Route Set	
No data available in ta	ble						
Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entri	ies					$\leftarrow \rightarrow \Rightarrow$	
Peering Rules							
★ Create Peerir	ng Rule						
Search:							:
# * Callee Pro	efix	Callee Pattern		Caller Pattern		Description	
No data available in ta	ble						
Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entri	ies					$\leftarrow \rightarrow \Rightarrow$	
© 2012 Sinwise GmbH	all rights reserved						

In this example, we will create a peering server with IP 2.3.4.5 and port 5060:

- Name: test-gw-1
- IP Address: 2.3.4.5
- Hostname: leave empty
- Port: 5060
- Protocol: UDP
- Weight: 1
- · Via Route: None

sip:wise	NGCP Da	shboard				ñ	III Settings 👻	
SIP Pe	Create Po	eering Serv	ers				×	
	1	Name	test-gw-1					
Peering	2	IP Address	2.3.4.5					
← Back		Hostname						Ξ
Search:	3	Port	5060					
# -	4	Protocol	UDP					
No data a	5	Weight	1					
Showing 0 t		Via Route	None				▼ → ⇒	
Peering							_	H
🖈 Crea						6	Save	
Search:								
# ^	Callee Prefix	:	Callee Pa	attern	Caller Pattern	Description		•

Click Save to create the peering server.

Тір

The *hostname* field for a peering server is optional. Usually, the IP address of the peer is used as domain part in the Request URI. Some peers may require you to set a particular hostname instead of the IP address there, which can be done by filling in this field. The IP address must always be given though, and the request will always be sent to the IP address, no matter what you put into the *hostname* field.

Тір

If you want to add a peering server with an IPv6 address, enter the address without surrounding square brackets into the *IP* Address column, e.g. ::1.

You can force an additional hop (e.g. via an external SBC) towards the peering server by using the *Via Route* option. The available options you can select there are defined in /etc/ngcp-config/config.yml, where you can add an array of SIP URIs in kamailio→lb→external_sbc like this:

```
kamailio:
    lb:
        external_sbc:
```

- sip:192.168.0.1:5060 - sip:192.168.0.2:5060

Execute ngcpcfg apply, then edit your peering server and select the hop from the *Via Route* selection.

Once a peering server has been created, this server can already send calls to the system.

Important

To be able to send outbound calls towards the servers in the *Peering Group*, you also need to define *Peering Rules*. They specify which source and destination numbers are going to be terminated over this group. To create a rule, click the *Create Peering Rule* button.

← F	ring Serv Back		eering Server						
		essfully created							
Sea	rch:								
# ^	Name	IP Address	Hostname	Port	Protocol	Weight	Via Route Set		
3	test-gw-1	2.3.4.5		5060	1	1			
Show	ing 1 to 1 of 1	entries						⇐ ← 1 →	⇒
Pee	ring Rule	25	_						
*(Create Pe	ering Rule	1						
Sea	rch:								
#	▲ Calle	e Prefix	Calle	e Pattern		Caller Pa	attern	Description	
No	data available	in table							
NOT									

Since the previously created peering group will be the only one in our example, we have to add a default rule to route *all* calls via this group. To do so, create a new peering rule with the following values:

- Callee Prefix: leave empty
- · Callee Pattern: leave empty
- Caller Pattern: leave empty

					inistrator Logout
sip:wise	NGCP Dashboard			*	🗱 Settings 👻
SIP Pe	Create Peering Rules				×
	Callee prefix				
Peering	Callee pattern				
← Back	Caller pattern				
Search:	1 Description	Default Rule			
# ^ Na 3 tes				2 Sav	
Showing 1 t	to 1 of 1 entries			← ←	
Peering	Rules				
🖈 Crea	te Peering Rule				
Search:					
# -	Callee Prefix	Callee Pattern	Caller Pattern	Description	_

Then click Save to add the rule to your group.

Тір

If you set the caller or callee rules to refine what is routed via this peer, enter all phone numbers in full E.164 format, that is <*cc><ac><sn>*. TIP: The *Caller Pattern* field covers the whole URI including the subscriber domain, so you can only allow certain domains over this peer by putting for example <code>lexample.com</code> into this field.

Peerir	ng Serv	ers								
← Bao	ck	★ Create Pe	ering Server							
Search	n:									
# ^ N	Name	IP Address	Hostname	Port	Protocol	Weight	Via Route Set			
3 t	test-gw-1	2.3.4.5		5060	1	1				
Showing	1 to 1 of 1 (entries							← ← 1	\rightarrow \Rightarrow
Peerir	ng Rule	S								
★ Cre	eate Pee	ering Rule								
Peering ru	ule success	fully created								
Search	n:									
# -	Callee I	Prefix	Callee Patter	n	Caller	Pattern	Descrip	tion		
1							Default	Rule		
Showing	1 to 1 of 1 o	entries							← ← 1	\rightarrow \Rightarrow

Important

The selection of peering servers for outbound calls is done in the following order: **1.** whether caller or callee pattern matched. **2.** length of the callee prefix. **3.** priority of the peering group. **4.** weight of the peering servers in the selected peering group. After one or more peering group(s) is matched for an outbound call, all servers in this group are tried, according to their weight (the bigger the weight of a server, the higher the probability that NGCP will send the call to it). If a peering server replies with SIP codes 408, 500 or 503, or if a peering server doesn't respond at all, the next peering server in the current peering group is used as a fallback, one after the other until the call succeeds. If no more servers are left in the current peering group, the next group which matches the peering rules is going to be used.

5.5.3 Authenticating and Registering against Peering Servers

Proxy-Authentication for outbound calls

If a peering server requires the SPCE to authenticate for outbound calls (by sending a 407 as response to an INVITE), then you have to configure the authentication details in the *Preferences* view of your peer host.

	ing Server	5						
← Ba	ack 🖈	r Create Peerii	ng Server					
							Search:	
# -	Name	IP Address	Hostname	Port	Protocol	Weight		
1	test-gw-1	2.3.4.5		5060	1	1	🛛 Edit	Delete Freferences
Showing	g 1 to 1 of 1 ent	ries						\leftarrow 1 \rightarrow =
Peeri	ing Rules							
★ Cr	eate Peeri	ng Rule						
							Search:	
# .	- Callee Pre	afiy	Callee Pattern	Call	ee Pattern	Descri	ntion	
2	Callee Pro			Call		Default		
2						Delaut	nure	

To configure this setting, open the *Remote Authentication* tab and edit the following three preferences:

- peer_auth_user: <username for peer auth>
- peer_auth_pass: cpassword for peer auth>
- peer_auth_realm: <domain for peer auth>

← Back

Preference peer_auth_realm successfully updated.

Access Re	strictions		
Number N	Manipulations		
NAT and I	Media Flow Control		
Remote A	uthentication		
	Name	Value	
0	peer_auth_user 1	peeruser1	
0	peer_auth_pass 2	peerpass1	
0	peer_auth_realm 3	testpeering.com	
0	peer_auth_register		
0	find_subscriber_by_uuid		

Important

If you do NOT authenticate against a peer host, then the caller CLI is put into the From and P-Asserted-Iden tity headers, e.g. "+4312345" <sip:+4312345@your-domain.com>. If you DO authenticate, then the From header is "+4312345" <sip:your_peer_auth_user@your_peer_auth_realm> (the CLI is in the Display field, the peer_auth_user in the From username and the peer_auth_realm in the From domain), and the P-Asserted-Identity header is as usual like <sip:+4312345@your-domain.com>. So for presenting the correct CLI in *CLIP no screening* scenarios, your peering provider needs to extract the correct user either from the From Display-Name or from the P-Asserted-Identity URI-User.

Тір

You will notice that these three preferences are also shown in the *Subscriber Preferences* for each subscriber. There you can override the authentication details for all peer host if needed, e.g. if every user authenticates with his own separate credentials at your peering provider.

Тір

If **peer_auth_realm** is set, the system may overwrite the Request-URI with the peer_auth_realm value of the peer when sending the call to that peer or peer_auth_realm value of the subscriber when sending a call to the subscriber. Since this is rarely a desired behavior, it is disabled by default starting with NGCP release 3.2. If you need the replacement, you should set *set_ruri_to_peer_auth_realm: 'yes'* in */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml*.

Registering at a Peering Server

Unfortunately, the credentials configured above are not yet automatically used to register the SPCE at your peer hosts. There is however an easy manual way to do so, until this is addressed.

Configure your peering servers with the corresponding credentials in */etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems/etc/reg_agent.conf.tt2*, then execute *ngcpcfg apply*.



Be aware that this will force SEMS to restart, which will drop running conference calls.

5.6 Configuring Rewrite Rule Sets

Important

On the NGCP, every phone number is treated in E.164 format *<country code><area code><subscriber number>*. Rewrite Rule Sets is a flexible tool to translate the caller and callee numbers to the proper format before the routing lookup and after the routing lookup separately. The created Rewrite Rule Sets can be assigned to the domains, subscribers and peers as a preference.

You would normally begin with creating a Rewrite Rule Set for your SIP domains. This is used to control what an end user can dial for outbound calls, and what is displayed as the calling party on inbound calls. The subscribers within a domain inherit Rewrite Rule Sets of that domain, unless this is overridden by a subscriber Rewrite Rule Set preference.

To create a new Rewrite Rule Set, go to Settings \rightarrow Rewrite Rule Sets. There you can create a Set identified by a name. This name is later shown in your peer-, domain- and user-preferences where you can select the rule set you want to use.

				🔺 Logg	ged in as ac	iministrator Logou	it
ςip:wise N	IGCP Dashboard				*	🗰 Settings 🔻	
Rewrite	e Rule Sets						
← Back	★ Create Rewrite Ru	ıle Set		Search:]
# *	Reseller	Name	Description				
1	default	defaultdom	Default Domain				
Showing 1 to 1	of 1 entries				←	1 → ⇒	
© 2013 Sipwise	e GmbH, all rights reserved.						

Click Create Rewrite Rule Set and fill in the form accordingly.

sip:wise Create	e Rewrite Rule	Sets				× tings -
Rewr	Reseller			Search:		
		#	Name	Contract #	Status	
		1	default	1	active	1 💌
- Back		Showing 1 to 1 of 1 ent	ries		← ← 1 Crea	te Reseller
ŧ	Name	domain-dialplan	2			
	Description	Dialplan for Domain	s 3			
nowing 1					4	Save
2013 Sipwise GmbH,	all rights reserved					

Press the Save button to create the set.

To view the *Rewrite Rules* within a set, hover over the row and click the *Rules* button.

				🔺 Logged in as	administrator Logout		
sip:wise N	GCP Dashboard						
				â	🇱 Settings 👻		
Rewrite	e Rule Sets						
← Back	★ Create Rewrite Ru	ule Set					
Rewrite rule set	Rewrite rule set successfully created						
			Searc	:h:			
, # ^	Reseller	Name	Description				
1	default	defaultdom	Default Domain				
2	default	domain-dialplan	Dialplan for Domains	🖾 Edit 🚺 🕯 (Delete 🔚 Rules		
Showing 1 to 2	of 2 entries			⇒	$\leftarrow 1 \rightarrow \Rightarrow$		

The rules are ordered by Caller and Callee as well as direction Inbound and Outbound.

Тір

In Europe, the following formats are widely accepted: +<cc><ac><sn>, 00<cc><ac><sn> and 0<ac><sn>. Also, some countries allow the areacode-internal calls where only subscriber number is dialed to reach another number in the same area. Within this section, we will use these formats to show how to use rewrite rules to normalize and denormalize number formats.

5.6.1 Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

These rules are used to normalize user-provided numbers (e.g. passed in *From Display Name* or *P-Preferred-Identity* headers) into E.164 format. In our example, we'll normalize the three different formats mentioned above into E.164 format.

To create the following rules, click on the Create Rewrite Rule for each of them and fill them with the values provided below.

Strip leading 00 or +

- Match Pattern: ^ (00 | \+) ([1-9] [0-9]+) \$
- Replacement Pattern: \2
- Description: International to E.164
- Direction: Inbound

• Field: Caller

Replace 0 by Caller's country code:

- Match Pattern: ^0 ([1-9] [0-9] +) \$
- Replacement Pattern: \${caller_cc}\1
- Description: National to E.164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Caller

NORMALIZE LOCAL CALLS:

- Match Pattern: ^ ([1-9][0-9]+)\$
- Replacement Pattern: \${caller_cc}\${caller_ac}\1
- Description: Local to E.164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Caller

ip:wise Creat	e Rule	× tings -
ewr	Match pattern ^(00 \+)([1-9][0-9]+)\$ 1	
Repl	lacement Pattern 2 2	
Back	Description International to E.164 3	
Inboun	Direction Inbound 4	
Inboun	Field Caller 5	•
Outbou		6 Save
2013 Sipwise GmbH	i, all rights reserved.	

Normalization for national and local calls is possible with special variables $\{caller_cc\}$ and $\{caller_ac\}$ that can be used in Replacement Pattern and are substituted by the country and area code accordingly during the call routing.

Important

These variables are only being filled in when a call originates from a subscriber (because only then the cc/ac information is known by the system), so you can not use them when a calls comes from a SIP peer (the variables will be just empty in this case).

Тір

When routing a call, the rewrite processing is stopped after the first match of a rule, starting from top to bottom. If you have two rules (e.g. a generic one and a more specific one), where both of them would match some numbers, reorder them with the up/down arrows into the appropriate position.

Rewrite Rules for domain-dialplan



Rewrite rule successfully created

	Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller							
		Match Pattern	Replacement Pattern	Description				
1	↑ ↓	^(00 \+)([1-9][0-9]+)\$	\2	International to E.164				
	↑₩2	^0([1-9][0-9]+)\$	{caller_cc}\1	National to E.164				
	↑ ↓	^([1-9][0-9]+)\$	{caller_cc}\${caller_ac}\1	Local to E.164				
Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee								
Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller								
	Outbound Rewrite Rules for Callee							

5.6.2 Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee

These rules are used to rewrite the number the end user dials to place a call to a standard format for routing lookup. In our example, we again allow the three different formats mentioned above and again normalize them to E.164, so we put in the same rules as for the caller.

Strip leading 00 or +

- Match Pattern: ^ (00 | \+) ([1-9][0-9]+) \$
- Replacement Pattern: \2

- Description: International to E.164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Callee

Replace 0 by Caller's country code:

- Match Pattern: ^0 ([1-9] [0-9] +) \$
- Replacement Pattern: \${caller_cc}\1
- Description: National to E.164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Callee

NORMALIZE AREACODE-INTERNAL CALLS:

- Match Pattern: ^ ([1-9] [0-9] +) \$
- Replacement Pattern: \${caller_cc}\${caller_ac}\1
- Description: Local to E.164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Callee

Tip

Our provided rules will only match if the caller dials a numeric number. If he dials an alphanumeric SIP URI, none of our rules will match and no rewriting will be done. You can however define rules for that as well. For example, you could allow your end users to dial support and rewrite that to your support hotline using the match pattern <code>^support\$</code> and the replace pattern 43800999000 or whatever your support hotline number is.

5.6.3 Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

These rules are used to rewrite the calling party number for a call to an end user. For example, if you want the device of your end user to show 0 < ac > < sn > if a national number calls this user, and 00 < cc > < ac > < sn > if an international number calls, put the following rules there.

Replace Austrian country code 43 by 0

- Match Pattern: ^43 ([1-9][0-9]+)\$
- Replacement Pattern: 0\1
- Description: E.164 to Austria National

- Direction: Outbound
- Field: Caller

PREFIX 00 FOR INTERNATIONAL CALLER

- Match Pattern: ^ ([1-9][0-9]+)\$
- Replacement Pattern: 00\1
- Description: E.164 to International
- Direction: Outbound
- Field: Caller

Тір

Note that both of the rules would match a number starting with 43, so reorder the national rule to be above the international one (if it's not already the case).

5.6.4 Outbound Rewrite Rules for Callee

These rules are used to rewrite the called party number immediately before sending out the call on the network. This gives you an extra flexibility by controlling the way request appears on a wire, when your SBC or other device expects the called party number to have a particular tech-prefix. It can be used on calls to end users too if you want to do some processing in intermediate SIP device, e.g. apply legal intercept selectively to some subscribers.

 $PREFIX \; \texttt{SIPSP} \# \; FOR \; \texttt{ALL} \; \texttt{CALLS}$

- Match Pattern: ^ ([0-9]+) \$
- Replacement Pattern: sipsp#\1
- Description: Intercept this call
- Direction: Outbound
- Field: Callee

5.6.5 Emergency Number Handling

Configuring Emergency Numbers is also done via Rewrite Rules.

For Emergency Calls from a subscriber to the platform, you need to define an *Inbound Rewrite Rule For Callee*, which adds a prefix emergency_ to the number (and can rewrite the number completely as well at the same time). If the proxy detects a call to a SIP URI starting with emergency_, it will enter a special routing logic bypassing various checks which might make a normal call fail (e.g. due to locked or blocked numbers, insufficient credits or exceeding the max. amount of parallel calls).

TAG AN EMERGENCY CALL

- Match Pattern: ^ (911 | 112) \$
- Replacement Pattern: emergency_\1
- Description: Tag Emergency Numbers
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Callee

To route an Emergency Call to a Peer, you can select a specific peering group by adding a peering rule with a *callee prefix* set to emergency_ to a peering group.

In order to normalize the emergency number to a valid format accepted by the peer, you need to assign an *Outbound Rewrite Rule For Callee*, which strips off the emergency_prefix. You can also use the variables $caller_emergency_cli$, $caller_emergency_prefix$ and $caller_emergency_suffix$ as well as $caller_ac$ and $caller_cc$, which are all configurable per subscriber to rewrite the number into a valid format.

NORMALIZE EMERGENCY CALL FOR PEER

- Match Pattern: ^emergency_(.+) \$
- Replacement Pattern: \${caller_emergency_prefix}\${caller_ac}\1
- Description: Normalize Emergency Numbers
- Direction: Outbound
- Field: Caller

5.6.6 Assigning Rewrite Rule Sets to Domains and Subscribers

Once you have finished to define your Rewrite Rule Sets, you need to assign them. For sets to be used for subscribers, you can assign them to their corresponding domain, which then acts as default set for all subscribers. To do so, go to *Settings* \rightarrow *Domains* and click *Preferences* on the domain you want the set to assign to. Click on *Edit* and select the Rewrite Rule Set created before.

Settings

sip:wise NGCP Dashboard

Dom	Domain "demo.sipwise.com" – Preferences							
	_							
← Bacl	< label{eq:starter}							
Call B	ockings							
Access	Restrictions 1							
Numb	er Manipulations							
	Name	Value						
0	rewrite_rule_set 2	defaultdom •	3 Edit					
0	extension_in_npn							
0	inbound_upn	From-Username						

You can do the same in the *Preferences* of your subscribers to override the rule on a subscriber basis. That way, you can finely control down to an individual user the dial-plan to be used. Go to *Settings* \rightarrow *Subscribers*, click the *Details* button on the subscriber you want to edit, the click the *Preferences* button.

5.6.7 Creating Dialplans for Peering Servers

For each peering server, you can use one of the Rewrite Rule Sets that was created previously as explained in Section 5.6 (keep in mind that special variables $\{caller_ac\}$ and $\{caller_cc\}$ can not be used when the call comes from a peer). To do so, click on the name of the peering server, look for the preference called *Rewrite Rule Sets*.

If your peering servers don't send numbers in E.164 format *<cc><ac><sn>*, you need to create *Inbound Rewrite Rules* for each peering server to normalize the numbers for caller and callee to this format, e.g. by stripping leading + or put them from national into E.164 format.

Likewise, if your peering servers don't accept this format, you need to create *Outbound Rewrite Rules* for each of them, for example to append a + to the numbers.

6 Advanced Subscriber Configuration

The sip:provider PRO provides a large amount of subscriber features in order to offer compelling VoIP services to end customers, and also to cover as many deployment scenarios as possible. In this chapter, we will go over the features and describe their behavior and their use cases.

6.1 Access Control for SIP Calls

There are two different methods to provide fine-grained call admission control to both subscribers and admins. One is *Block Lists*, where you can define which numbers or patterns can be called from a subscriber to outbound direction and which numbers or patterns are allowed to call a subscriber in inbound direction. The other is *NCOS Levels*, where the admin predefines rules for outbound calls, which are grouped in certain levels. The user can then just choose the level, or the admin can restrict a user to a certain level. Also sip:provider PRO offers some options to restrict the IP addresses that subscriber is allowed to use the service from. The following chapters will discuss these features in detail.

6.1.1 Block Lists

Block Lists provide a way to control which users/numbers are able to call or to be called, based on a subscriber level, and can be found in the *Call Blockings* section of the subscriber preferences.

Trusted	Trusted Sources							
Call Blo	Call Blockings							
	Name		Value					
0	block_in_mode							
0	block_in_list							
0	block_in_clir							
0	block_out_mode							
0	block_out_list							
0	adm_block_in_mode							
0	adm_block_in_list							
0	adm_block_in_clir							
0	adm_block_out_mode							
0	adm_block_out_list							
0	ncos							

Block Lists are separated into Administrative Block Lists (adm_block_*) and Subscriber Block Lists (block_*). They both have

the same behavior, but Administrative Block Lists take higher precedence. Administrative Block Lists are only accessible by the system administrator and can thus be used to override any Subscriber Block Lists, e.g. to block certain destinations. The following break-down of the various block features apply to both types of lists.

Block Modes

Block lists can either be *whitelists* or *blacklists* and are controlled by the User Preferences *block_in_mode*, *block_out*mode___ and their administrative counterparts.

- The *blacklist* mode (option is not checked tells the system to **allow anything except the entries in the list**. This mode is used if you want to just block certain numbers and allow all the rest.
- The *whitelist* mode indicates to **reject anything except the entries in the list**. This is used if you want to enforce a strict policy and allow only selected destinations or sources.

You can change a list mode from one to the other at any time.

Block Lists

The list contents are controlled by the User Preferences *block_in_list*, *block_out_list* and their administrative counterparts. Click on the *Edit* button in the *Preferences* view to define the list entries.

In block list entries, you can provide shell patterns like * and []. The behavior of the list is controlled by the *block_xxx_mode* feature (so they are either allowed or rejected). In our example above we have *block_out_mode* set to *blacklist*, so all calls to US numbers and to the Austrian number +431234567 are going to be rejected.

sip:wise		3 🗙 _{tings} 👻
Edit Preference block_out	list	
Subsc 1* 1		
431234567 2 ← Back		Add
Call Forwards		
Voicemail and Voicebox		
Fax2Mail and Sendfax		
Speed Dial		
Reminder		
Trusted Sources		
Call Blockings		
Name	Value	

Click the Close icon once you're done editing your list.

Block Anonymous Numbers

For incoming call, the User Preference *block_in_clir* and *adm_block_in_clir* controls whether or not to reject incoming calls with number supression (either "[Aa]nonymous" in the display- or user-part of the From-URI or a header *Privacy: id* is set). This flag is independent from the Block Mode.

6.1.2 NCOS Levels

NCOS Levels provide predefined lists of allowed or denied destinations for outbound calls of local subscribers. Compared to *Block Lists*, they are much easier to manage, because they are defined on a global scope, and the individual levels can then be assigned to each subscriber. Again there is the distinction for user- and administrative-levels.

NCOS levels can either be whitelists or blacklists.

- The *blacklist* mode indicates to **allow everything except the entries in this level**. This mode is used if you want to just block certain destinations and allow all the rest.
- The *whitelist* mode indicates to **reject anything except the entries in this level**. This is used if you want to enforce a strict policy and allow only selected destinations.

Creating NCOS Levels

To create an NCOS Level, go to *Settings* \rightarrow *NCOS Levels* and press the *Create NCOS Level* button.

				🔺 Logged	l in as administrator Logout
sip:wise N	NGCP Dashboard				👚 🏭 Settings 🔻
NCOS I	Levels				
← Back	★ Create NCO	5 Level			
				Search:	
# ^	Reseller	Level Name	Mode	Description	
No data ava	ilable in table				
Showing 0 to (0 of 0 entries				$\Leftarrow \leftarrow \rightarrow \Rightarrow$
© 2013 Sipwis	se GmbH, all rights reserved				

Select a reseller, enter a name, select the mode and add a description, then click the Save button.

стеа	ate NCOS Levels					× tings -
cos	Reseller			Search:		
	4	ŧ	Name	Contract #	Status	
	1	I	default	1	active <mark>1</mark>	
Back	Sh	iowing 1 to 1 of 1 ent	ries		← ← 1 · ·	→ ⇒
					Cleater	eseller
	Level Name te	st 2				
o data a	Mode b	lacklist 3				•
wing 0 t	Description	COS Test Level	4			
					5	Save
013 Sipwise Gmb	oH, all rights reserved.					

Creating Rules per NCOS Level

To define the rules within the newly created NCOS Level, click on the Patterns button of the level.

sip:wise	NGCP Dashboa	ard			👚 🏭 Settings 👻
NCOS	5 Levels				
← Bacl	Create N	COS Level		5	earch:
# ^	Reseller	Level Name	Mode	Description	
1	default	test	blacklist	NCOS Test Level	C Edit Delete Edit Delete
Showing 1	to 1 of 1 entries				

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

In the *Number Patterns* view you can create multiple patterns to define your level, one after the other. Click on the *Create Pattern Entry* Button on top and fill out the form.

sīp:wise Creat	e Number Pattern	× tings -
Numl	Pattern 439 1 Description Austrian Premium Num	nbers 2
← Back		3 Save
# ^	Pattern	Description
2	^439	Austrian Premium Numbers
Showing 1 to 1 of 1 ent		

In this example, we block (since the mode of the level is *blacklist*) all numbers starting with 439. Click the *Save* button to save the entry in the level.

The option *include local area code in list* for a blacklist means that calls within the area code of the subscribers are denied, and for whitelist that they are allowed, respectively. For example if a subscriber has country-code 43 and area-code 1, then selecting this checkbox would result in an implicit entry ^431.

Assigning NCOS Levels to Subscribers/Domains

Once you've defined your NCOS Levels, you can assign them to local subscribers. To do so, navigate to *Settings* \rightarrow *Subscribers*, search for the subscriber you want to edit, press the *Details* button and go to the *Preferences* View. There, press the *Edit* button on either the *ncos* or *adm*ncos *setting in the* Call Blockings__ section.

Call Blo	Call Blockings						
	Name	Value					
0	block_in_mode						
0	block_in_list						
0	block_in_clir						
0	block_out_mode	•					
0	block_out_list	1* 431234567					
0	adm_block_in_mode						
0	adm_block_in_list						
0	adm_block_in_clir						
0	adm_block_out_mode						
0	adm_block_out_list						
ø	ncos 2	•	3 Edit				

You can assign the NCOS level to all subscribers within a particular domain. To do so, navigate to *Settings* \rightarrow *Domains*, select the domain you want to edit and click *Preferences*. There, press the *Edit* button on either *ncos* or *admin_ncos* in the *Call Blockings* section.

Note: if both domain and subscriber have same NCOS preference set (either *ncos* or *adm_ncos*, or both) the subscriber's preference is used. This is done so that you can override the domain-global setting on the subscriber level.

Assigning NCOS Level for Forwarded Calls to Subscribers/Domains

In some countries there are regulatory requirements that prohibit subscribers from forwarding their numbers to special numbers like emergency, police etc. While the sip:provider PRO does not deny provisioning Call Forward to these numbers, the administrator can prevent the incoming calls from being actually forwarded to numbers defined in the NCOS list: just select the appropriate NCOS level in the domain's or subscriber's preference *adm_cf_ncos*. This NCOS will apply only to the Call Forward from the subscribers and not to the normal outgoing calls from them.

6.1.3 IP Address Restriction

The sip:provider PRO provides subscriber preference *allowed_ips* to restrict the IP addresses that subscriber is allowed to use the service from. If the REGISTER or INVITE request comes from an IP address that is not in the allowed list, the sip:provider PRO will reject it with a 403 message. Also a voice message can be played when the call attempt is rejected (if configured).

By default, allowed_ips is an empty list which means that subscriber is not restricted. If you want to configure a restriction, navigate

to *Settings* \rightarrow *Subscribers*, search for the subscriber you want to edit, press *Details* and then *Preferences* and press *Edit* for the *allowed_ips* preference in the *Access Restrictions* section.

Call Blockir	Call Blockings								
Access Rest	Access Restrictions								
1	Name	Value							
0	lock								
0	concurrent_max								
0	concurrent_max_out								
0	allowed_clis								
0	reject_emergency								
0	concurrent_max_per_account								
0	concurrent_max_out_per_account								
0	allowed_ips 2		3 Edit						
0	man_allowed_ips								
0	ignore_allowed_ips								
0	allow_out_foreign_domain								

Press the Edit button to the right of empty drop-down list.

You can enter multiple allowed IP addresses or IP address ranges one after another. Click the *Add* button to save each entry in the list. Click the *Delete* button if you want to remove some entry.

6.2 Call Forwarding and Call Hunting

The sip:provider PRO provides the capabilities for normal *call forwarding* (deflecting a call for a local subscriber to another party immediately or based on events like the called party being busy or doesn't answer the phone for a certain number of seconds) and *serial call hunting* (sequentially executing a group of deflection targets until one of them succeeds). Targets can be stacked, which means if a target is also a local subscriber, it can have another call forward or hunt group which is executed accordingly.

Call Forwards and Call Hunting Groups can either be executed unconditionally or based on a *Time Set Definition*, so you can define deflections based on time period definitions (e.g. Monday to Friday 8am to 4pm etc).

6.2.1 Setting a simple Call Forward

Go to your Subscriber Preferences and click Edit on the Call Forward Type you want to set (e.g. Call Forward Unconditional).

	🚢 Logged in as administrator Logout
sip:wise Edit Call Forward Unconditional	× tings -
Subset Destination Ovoicemail Conference	
← Back 2 URI/Number 4312345 Call For for (seconds) 300	3
Call Fo	Advanced View Save
Call Forward Timeout	
Call Forward Unavailable	
Voicemail and Voicebox	

If you select *URI/Number* in the *Destination* field, you also have to set a *URI/Number*. The timeout defines for how long this destination should be tried to ring.

6.2.2 Advanced Call Hunting

If you want multiple destinations to be executed one after the other, you need to change into the *Advanced View* when editing your call forward. There, you can select multiple *Destination Set/Time Set* pairs to be executed.

A Destination Set is a list of destinations to be executed one after another.

A Time Set is a time definition when to execute this Destination Set.

Configuring Destination Sets

Click on *Manage Destination Sets* to see a list of available sets. The *quickset_cfu* has been implicitly created during our creation of a simple call forward. You can edit it to add more destinations, or you can create a new destination set.

		Logged in as administrat	or Logout
síp:ພາ່ຣະ		estination Set	tings 👻
Subsc		1 Name my test set	
← Back		Destination Voicemail 2 URI/Number	
Call For	3	URI/Number 12345	
Туре		for (seconds) 300	
Call Fo		4 Priority 1	
Call Fo		Remove	
Call Fo			
Call Fo		optional 5 Add another destination	
Voicem		6 Save	

When you close the Destination Set Overview, you can now assign your new set in addition or instead of the quickset_cfu set.

				Logged in as administrate	or Logout
sip:wise	Edit	Call Forward Un	conditional	×	tings 👻
Subso	1	Destination Set	quickset_cfu		
		during Time Set	<always></always>		
← Back	C	optional 2 via "Add	more"	Remove	
Туре		Destination Set	my test set	▼ =	
Call Fo		during Time Set	<always></always>		
Call Fo				Remove	
Call Fo				Add more	
Voicem				Manage Destination Sets Manage Time Sets Simple View Save	

Press Save to store your settings.

Configuring Time Sets

Click on *Manage Time Sets* in the advanced call-forward menu to see a list of available time sets. By default there are none, so you have to create one.

Edit	Time Se	et						×
ubso	1	Name	my test time s	et				
		Period	Year	Month	Day	Weekday	Hour	Minute
Back		2	2013 🔹	April •	•	Monday •	•	•
_		2	through	through	through	through	trough	through
all For			•	Septembe •	•	Friday •	•	•
Type Call Fo Call Fo							optional 3	Remove another period
Call Fo								4 Save

You need to provide a *Name*, and a list of *Periods* where this set is active. If you only set the top setting of a date field (like the *Year* setting in our example above), then it's valid for just this setting (like the full year of *2013* in our case). If you provide the bottom setting as well, it defines a period (like our *Month* setting, which means from beginning of April to end of September).

Important

the period is a *through* definition, so it covers the full range. If you define an *Hour* definition *8-16*, then this means from *08:00* to *16:59:59* (unless you filter the *Minutes* down to something else).

If you close the *Time Sets* management, you can assign your new time set to the call forwards you're configuring.

6.3 Limiting Subscriber Preferences via Subscriber Profiles

The preferences a subscriber can provision by himself via the CSC can be limited via profiles within profile sets assigned to subscribers.

6.3.1 Subscriber Profile Sets

Profile sets define containers for profiles. The idea is to define profile sets with different profiles by the administrator (or the reseller, if he is permitted to do so). Then, a subscriber with administrative privileges can re-assign profiles within his profile sets for the subscribers of his customer account.

						🔺 Logged	in as administrat	tor 🍳 Languag	ge 🔻 Logout
sip:wise NG	CP Dashboard			1	ñ		toring & Statisti	ics – 🏭 S	
Subsc _{Cr}	eate Subscriber Pi	rofile Sets						×	
	Reseller			2	Searc	ch:			
← Back		#	Name	Contract #			Status		
		1	default	1			active		
Show 5		2	test	2			active		
# .		Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entr	ies				← ← 1	\rightarrow \Rightarrow	
1							Crea	ate Reseller	
2	Name	testset							
3	Description	Test Set							
Showing 1									\rightarrow \Rightarrow
								Save	

Profile Sets can be defined in Settings -> Subscriber Profiles. To create a new Profile Set, click Create Subscriber Profile Set.

You need to provide a reseller, name and description.

To create Profiles within a Profile Set, hover over the Profile Set and click the Profiles button.

Profiles within a Profile Set can be created by clicking the Create Subscriber Profile button.

	GCP Dashboard	tings +
	Create Subscriber P	rofile
Subsc	Name	test
	Description	Test Profile
🗲 Back	Default Profile	≅
Show 5	block_in_mode	
#	block_in_list	
No data a	block_in_clir	
Showing 01	block_out_mode	
	block_out_list	
	cfu	
		Save
© 2013 Sipwise	e GmbH, all rights reserved.	

Checking the *Default Profile* option causes this profile to get assigned automatically to all subscribers, who have the profile set assigned. Other options define the user preferences which should be made available to the subscriber.

6.4 Voicemail System

6.4.1 Accessing the IVR Menu

For a subscriber to manage his voicebox via IVR, there are two ways to access the voicebox. One is to call the URI voicebox@ yourdomain from the subscriber itself, allowing password-less access to the IVR, as the authentication is already done on SIP level. The second is to call the URI voiceboxpass@yourdomain from any subscriber, causing the system to prompt for a mailbox and a PIN.

Mapping numbers and codes to IVR access

Since access might need to be provided from external networks like PSTN/Mobile, and since certain SIP phones don't support calling alphanumeric numbers to dial voicebox, you can map any arbitrary number to the voicebox URIs using rewrite rules.

To do so, you can provision a match pattern like ^ (00 | \+) 12345\$ with a replace pattern voicebox or voiceboxpass to

map a number to either password-less or password-based IVR access.

External IVR access

When reaching voiceboxpass, the subscriber is prompted for her mailbox number and a password. All numbers assigned to a subscriber are valid input (primary number and any alias number). By default, the required format is in E.164, so the subscriber needs to enter the full number including country code, for example 4912345 if she got assigned a German number.

You can globally configure a rewrite rule in config.yml using asterisk.voicemail.normalize_match and aster isk.voicemail.normalize_replace, allowing you to customize the format a subscriber can enter, e.g. having ^0 ([1-9][0-9]+) \$ as match part and 49\$1 as replace part to accept German national format.

6.4.2 IVR Menu Structure

The following list shows you how the voicebox menu is structured.

- 1 Read voicemail messages
 - 3 Advanced options
 - * 3 To Hear messages Envelope
 - * * Return to the main menu
 - 4 Play previous message
 - 5 Repeat current message
 - 6 Play next message
 - 7 Delete current message
 - 9 Save message in a folder
 - * 0 Save in new Messages
 - * 1 Save in old Messages
 - * 2 Save in Work Messages
 - * 3 Save in Family Messages
 - * 4 Save in Friends Messages
 - * # Return to the main menu
- 2 Change folders
 - 0 Switch to new Messages
 - 1 Switch to old Messages
 - 2 Switch to Work Messages
 - 3 Switch to Family Messages
 - 4 Switch to Friends Messages
 - # Get Back

- 3 Advanced Options
 - * To return to the main menu
- 0 Mailbox options
 - 1 Record your unavailable message
 - * 1 accept it
 - * 2 Listen to it
 - * 3 Rerecord it
 - 2 Record your busy message
 - * 1 accept it
 - * 2 Listen to it
 - * 3 Rerecord it
 - 3 Record your name
 - * 1 accept it
 - * 2 Listen to it
 - * 3 Rerecord it
 - 4 Record your temporary greetings
 - * 1 accept it
 - * 2 Listen to it
 - * 3 Rerecord it
 - 5 Change your password
 - * To return to the main menu
- * Help
- # Exit

6.5 Configuring Subscriber IVR Language

The language for the Voicemail system IVR or Vertical Service Codes (VSC) IVRs may be set using the subscriber or domain preference *language*.

Ø	⁸ Edit Preference 'l	anguage for voicemail and	d app server'	×	
0	a language g	Spanish		ł	
Ø	g			Save	
0	gpp8	General Purpose Parameter 8			
0	gpp9	General Purpose Parameter 9			
0	conference_pin	PIN for access to pin-protected conference	29165		
Ð	ua_header_mode	User-Agent header passing mode	Strip		
Ø	force_outbound_calls_to_peer	Force outbound calls from user or peer to peer	use domain defalut		
0	language	Language for voicemail and app server	use domain default		

The sip:provider PRO provides the pre-installed prompts for the Voicemail in the English, Spanish, French and Italian languages and the pre-installed prompts for the Vertical Service Codes IVRs in English only.

The other IVRs such as the Conference system and the error announcements use the Sound Sets configured in NGCP Panel and uploaded by the administrator in his language of choice.

6.6 Sound Sets

The sip:provider PRO provides the administrator with ability to upload the voice prompts such as conference prompts or call error announcements on the *Sound Sets page*. There is a preference *sound_set* on Domain and Subscriber levels to link subscribers to the sound set that they should hear (as usual the subscriber preference overrides the domain one). Sound Sets can be defined in *Settings*-*Sound Sets*. To create a new Sound Set, click *Create Sound Set*. Then click the *Files* button.

					💄 Logged in as ad	lministrator 🔇	🕽 Language 👻	Logout
sip:wise NGCP Dashboard				*	Monitoring ،	III Setti	ngs -	
Soun	d Sets							
← Back	Create Sc	und Set						
Sound set s	uccessfully created							
Show 5		▼ entries			Search:			
# -	Reseller	Customer	Name	Description				
1	default		Conference			🛛 Edit 👔	Delete	Files
2	default		Early media rejects	Failed call attempt announcements				
Showing 1	to 2 of 2 entries					=	- 1 -	⇒

Note

You may use 8 or 16 bit mono WAV audio files for all of the voice prompts.

6.6.1 Configuring Early Reject Sound Sets

The call error announcements are grouped under *Early Rejects* section. Unfold the section and click *Upload* next to the sound handles (Names) that you want to use. Choose a WAV file from your file system, and click the Loopplay setting if you want to play the file in a loop instead of just once. Click Save to upload the file.

early_rejects							
Name	Filename	Loop					
block_in			🖾 Upload				
block_out		•					
block_ncos							
block_override_pin_wrong		•					
locked_in							
locked_out		•					
max_calls_in							
max_calls_out		•					
max_calls_peer							
unauth_caller_ip		-					

The call error announcements are played to the user in early media hence the name "Early Reject". If you don't provide the sound files for any handles they will not be used and the sip:provider PRO will fallback to sending the error response code back to the user.

Handle	Description	Message played
block_in	This is what the calling party hears	Your call is blocked by the number you
	when a call is made from a number	are trying to reach.
	that is blocked by the incoming block	
	list (adm_block_in_list, block_in_list	
	subscriber preferences)	
block_out	This is what the calling party hears	Your call to the number you are trying
	when a call is made to a number that	to reach is blocked.
	is blocked by the outgoing block list	
	(adm_block_out_list, block_out_list	
	subscriber preferences)	
block_ncos	This is what the calling party hears	Your call to the number you are trying
	when a call is made to a number that	to reach is not permitted.
	is blocked by the NCOS level assigned	
	to the subscriber or domain (the	
	NCOS level chosen in ncos and	
	adm_ncos preferences)	

Handle	Description	Message played
block_override_pin_wrong	Announcement played to calling party	The PIN code you have entered is not
	if it used wrong PIN code to override	correct.
	the outgoing user block list or the	
	NCOS level for this call (the PIN set by	
	block_out_override_pin and	
	adm_block_out_override_pin	
	preferences)	
locked_in	Announcement played on incoming	The number you are trying to reach is
	call to a subscriber that is locked for	currently not permitted to receive calls.
	incoming calls	
locked_out	Announcement played on outgoing call	You are currently not allowed to place
_	to subscriber that is locked for	outbound calls.
	outgoing calls	
max_calls_in	Announcement played on incoming	The number you are trying to reach is
	call to a subscriber who has exceeded	currently busy. Please try again later.
	the concurrent max limit by sum of	
	incoming and outgoing calls or whose	
	customer has exceeded the	
	concurrent_max_per_account limit by	
	sum of incoming and outgoing calls	
	max_calls_out	Announcement played on outgoing call
		to a subscriber who has exceeded
		the <i>concurrent_max</i> (total limit) or
		<i>concurrent_max_out</i> (limit on number
		of outbound calls) or whose customer
		has exceeded the
		concurrent max per account or
		concurrent max out per account
		limit
All outgoing lines are currently in use.	max_calls_peer	Announcement played on calls from
Please try again later.		the peering if that peer has reached
		the maximum number of concurrent
		calls (configured by admin in
		<i>concurrent_max</i> preference of peering
		server)
The network you are trying to reach is	unauth_caller_ip	This is what the calling party hears
currently busy. Please try again later.		when it tries to make a call from
		unauthorized IP address or network
		(allowed_ips, man_allowed_ips

Table 1: (continued)

Handle	Description	Message played
You are not allowed to place calls from	relaying_denied	Announcement played on inbound call
your current network location.		from trusted IP (e.g. external PBX)
		with non-local Request-URI domain
The network you are trying to reach is	invalid_speeddial	This is what the calling party hears
not available.		when it calls an empty speed-dial slot
The speed dial slot you are trying to	cf_loop	Announcement played when the called
use is not available.		subscriber has the call forwarding
		configured to itself
The number you are trying to reach is	callee_offline	Announcement played on incoming
forwarded to an invalid destination.		call to the subscriber which is currently
		not registered
The number you are trying to reach is	callee_busy	Announcement played on incoming
currently not available. Please try		call to the subscriber which is currently
again later.		busy (486 response from the UAS)
The number you are trying to reach is	callee_unknown	Announcement that is played on call to
currently busy. Please try again later.		unknown or invalid number (not
		associated with any of our
		subscribers/hunt groups)
The number you are trying to reach is	callee_tmp_unavailable	Announcement played on incoming
not in use.		call to the subscriber which is currently
		unavailable (408, other 4xx or no
		response code or 30x with malformed
		contact)
The number you are trying to reach is	peering_unavailable	Announcement played in case of
currently not available. Please try		outgoing off-net call when there is no
again later.		peering rule matching this destination
		and/or source
The network you are trying to reach is	voicebox_unavailable	Announcement played on call to
not available.		voicebox if the voicemail server is not
		configured (system operation is
		impaired)
The voicemail of the number you are	emergency_unsupported	Announcement played when
trying to reach is currently not		emergency destination is dialed but
available. Please try again later.		the emergency calls are
		administratively prohibited for this user
		or domain (<i>reject_emergency</i>
		preference is enabled)
You are not allowed to place	no_credit	Announcement played when prepaid
emergency calls from this line. Please		account has insufficient balance to
use a different phone.		make a call to this destination

Table 1: (continued)

6.7 Conference System

The sip:provider PRO provides the simple pin-protected conferencing service built using the SEMS DSM scripting language. Hence it is open for all kinds of modifications and extensions.

Template files for the sems conference scripts stored in /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems/:

- IVR script: /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems/dsm/confpin.dsm.tt2
- Config: /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems/dsm/confpin.conf.tt2

6.7.1 Configuring Call Forward to Conference

Go to your Subscriber Preferences and click Edit on the Call Forward Type you want to set (e.g. Call Forward Unconditional).

					-055ca 11 a 5 (190080	
sip:wise	Edit Call Forward U	nconditi	onal				×	
Subso	Destination	VoicentConfertURI/Nut	ence					ttings 👻
	URI/Number							
← Back	for (seconds)	300						d Groups
Call For Type Call For					Adva	nced View Sav	re	
Call For	ward Busy							
Call For	ward Timeout							
Call For	ward Unavailable							

You should select *Conference* option in the *Destination* field and leave the *URI/Number* empty. The timeout defines for how long this destination should be tried to ring.

6.7.2 Configuring Conference Sound Sets

Sound Sets can be defined in *Settings* \rightarrow *Sound Sets.* To create a new Sound Set, click *Create Sound Set.* Then click the *Files* button.

Manage Sound Set C	omerence			_
Edit conference_g	reeting		×	-
Confere Soundfile		v		d Groups
confere			Save	
conference_pin_wrong	conference_pin_wrong.wav	•		
conference_joined	conference_joined.wav	•		
conference_join	conference_join.wav	•		
conference_leave	conference_leave.wav	•		
goo dby e	goodbye.wav	•		

Upload the following files:

Table 2: Conference Sound Sets

Handle	Message played
conference_greeting	Welcome to the conferencing service. Please enter your
	PIN, followed by the pound key.
conference_pin_wrong	You have entered an invalid PIN number. Please try again.
conference_joined	You will be placed into the conference.
conference_join	A person has joined the conference.
conference_leave	A person has left the conference.
goodbye	Goodbye.

Note

You may use 8 or 16 bit mono WAV audio files.

Then set the preference *sound_set* on the Domain or Subscriber level in order to assign the Sound Set you have just created to the subscriber (as usual the subscriber preference overrides the domain one).

6.7.3 Entering the Conference with a PIN

It is mandatory to configure the PIN code for entrance to the conference on the same subscriber which has the Call Forwarding active. Responsible for this is the *conference_pin* preference in the Internals section of subscriber preferences.

0	Edit Preference 'PIN for access to pin-protected conference'				
0	conference_pin	29165			
0	g			Save	
0	gppo	General Purpose Parameter o		_	
Ø	gpp9	General Purpose Parameter 9			
0	conference_pin	PIN for access to pin-protected conference	29165		
Ø	ua_header_mode	User-Agent header passing mode	Strip		
Ø	force_outbound_calls_to_peer	Force outbound calls from user or peer to peer	use domain defalut		
0	language	Language for voicemail and app server	use domain default		

When calling the conference IVR you are requested to enter this PIN. Upon the successful entry of the PIN the caller hears the announcement that he is going to be placed into a conference and at the same time this is announced to all participants in the conference.

7 Customer Self-Care Interfaces

There are two ways for end users to maintain their subscriber settings: via the *Customer Self-Care Web Interface* and via *Vertical Service Codes* using their SIP phones.

7.1 The Customer Self-Care Web Interface

The NGCP provides a web panel for end users (CSC panel) to maintain their subscriber accounts, which is running on *https://<ce-ip>*. Every subscriber can log in there, change subscriber feature settings, view their call lists, retrieve voicemail messages and trigger calls using the click-to-dial feature.

7.1.1 Login Procedure

To log into the CSC panel, the end user has to provide his full web username (e.g. user1@1.2.3.4) and the web password defined in Section 5.2. Once logged in, he can change his web password in the *Account* section. This will NOT change his SIP password, so if you control the end user devices, you can auto-provision the SIP password into the device and keep it secret, and just hand over the web password to the customer. This way, the end user will only be able to place calls with this auto-provisioned device and not with an arbitrary soft-phone, but can nonetheless manage his account via the CSC panel.

Important

You can simplify the login procedure for one SIP domain in such a way that users in this domain only need to pass the user part (e.g. user1) as a username instead of the full web username to log in by setting the parameter www_csc o site_domain in the config file /etc/ngcp-config/config.yml to the corresponding domain (e.g. 1.2.3.4) and execute ngcpcfg apply.

7.1.2 Site Customization

As an operator, you can change the appearance of the CSC panel by modifying a couple of parameters in the section *www_csc→site_config* of the config file */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml*. Modify the site title, your company details and the logo to reflect your use case.

You can also enable/disable specific languages a user can choose from in the CSC panel. Currently, English (en), French (fr), German (de) and Spanish (es) are supported and English is activated by default.

After changing one or more of the parameters in this file, execute ngcpcfg apply to activate the changes.

7.2 The Vertical Service Code Interface

Vertical Service Codes (VSC) are codes a user can dial on his phone to provision specific features for his subscriber account. The format is *<code>*<value> to activate a specific feature, and #<code> or #<code># to deactivate it. The *code* parameter is a two-digit code, e.g. 72. The *value* parameter is the value being set for the corresponding feature.



Important

The value user input is normalized using the Rewrite Rules Sets assigned to domain as described in Section 5.6.

By default, the following codes are configured for setting features. The examples below assume that there is a domain rewrite rule normalizing the number format 0 < ac > < sn > to < cc > < ac > < sn > using 43 as country code.

- 72 enable Call Forward Unconditional e.g. to 431000 by dialing *72*01000, and disable it by dialing #72.
- 90 enable *Call Forward on Busy* e.g. to 431000 by dialing *90*01000, and disable it by dialing #90.
- 92 enable *Call Forward on Timeout* e.g. after 30 seconds of ringing to 431000 by dialing *92*30*01000, and disable it by dialing #92.
- 93 enable Call Forward on Not Available e.g. to 431000 by dialing *93*01000, and disable it by dialing #93.
- 50 set Speed Dial Slot, e.g. set slot 1 to 431000 by dialing *50*101000, which then can be used by dialing *1.
- 55 set One-Shot Reminder Call e.g. to 08:30 by dialing *55*0830.
- 31 set Calling Line Identification Restriction for one call, e.g. to call 431000 anonymously dial *31*01000.
- 80 call using *Call Block Override PIN*, number should be prefixed with a block override PIN configured in admin panel to disable the outgoing user/admin block list and NCOS level for a call. For example, when override PIN is set to 7890, dial *80*789001000 to call 431000 bypassing block lists.

You can change any of the codes (but not the format) in /etc/ngcp-config/config.yml in the section sems \rightarrow vsc. After the changes, execute ngcpcfg apply.

Caution

If you have the EMTAs under your control, make sure that the specified VSCs don't overlap with EMTA-internal VSCs, because the VSC calls must be sent to the NGCP via SIP like normal telephone calls.

7.3 The Voicemail Interface

NGCP offers several ways to access the Voicemail box.

The CSC panel allows your users to listen to voicemail messages from the web browser, delete them and call back the user who left the voice message. User can setup voicemail forwarding to the external email and the PIN code needed to access the voicebox from any telephone also from the CSC panel.

To manage the voice messages from SIP phone: simply dial internal voicemail access number 2000.

To change the access number: look for the parameter *voicemail_number* in */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml* in the section *sems*→*vsc*. After the changes, execute ngcpcfg apply.

Тір

To let the callers leave a voice message when user is not available he should enable Call Forward to Voicebox. The Call Forward can be provisioned from the CSC panel as well as by dialing Call Forward VSC with the voicemail number. E.g. when parameter *voicemail_number* is set to *9999*, a Call Forward on Not Available to the Voicebox is set if the user dials *93*99999. As a result, all calls will be redirected to the Voicebox if SIP phone is not registered.

To manage the voice messages from any phone:

- As an operator, you can setup some DID number as external voicemail access number: for that, you should add a special rewrite rule (Inbound Rewrite Rule for Callee, see Section 5.6.) on the incoming peer, to rewrite that DID to "voiceboxpass". Now when user calls this number the call will be forwarded to the voicemail server and he will be prompted for mailbox and password. The mailbox is the full E.164 number of the subscriber account and the password is the PIN set in the CSC panel.
- The user can also dial his own number from PSTN, if he setup Call Forward on Not Available to the Voicebox, and when reaching the voicemail server he can interrupt the "user is unavailable" message by pressing * key and then be prompted for the PIN. After entering PIN and confirming with # key he will enter own voicemail menu. PIN is random by default and must be kept secret for that reason.

8 Billing Configuration

This chapter describes the steps necessary to rate calls and export rated CDRs (call detail records) to external systems.

8.1 Billing Data Import

Service billing on the NGCP is based on billing profiles, which may be assigned to VoIP accounts and SIP peerings. The design focuses on a simple, yet flexible approach, to support arbitrary dial-plans without introducing administrative overhead for the system administrators. The billing profiles may define a base fee and free time or free money per billing interval. Unused free time or money automatically expires at the end of the billing interval.

Each profile may have call destinations (usually based on E.164 number prefix matching) with configurable fees attached. Call destination fees each support individual intervals and rates, with a different duration and/or rate for the first interval. (e.g.: charge the first minute when the call is opened, then every 30 seconds, or make it independent of the duration at all) It is also possible to specify different durations and/or rates for peak and off-peak hours. Peak time may be specified based on weekdays, with additional support for manually managed dates based on calendar days. The call destinations can finally be grouped for an overview on user's invoices by specifying a zone in two detail levels. (E.g.: national landline, national mobile, foreign 1, foreign 2, etc.)

8.1.1 Creating Billing Profiles

The first step when setting up billing data is to create a billing profile, which will be the container for all other billing related data. Go to *Settings* \rightarrow *Billing* and click on *Create Billing Profile*.

					💄 Logged i	n as administrator Logout
sip:wise						
SIP:WISE	Create Billing Profile	es				× tings -
Billin	Reseller	Search:				
		#	Name	Contract #	Status	
		1	default	1	active 1	 Image: A set of the set of the
← Back		Showing 1 to 1 of 1 ent	ries		← ← 1 -	→ ⇒
					Create R	eseller
#	Handle	mytestprofile	2			
1	Name	My Test Profile	3			
Showing 1	Prepaid					
	Interval charge	0				
© 2013 Sip					4	Save

The fields Reseller, Handle and Name are mandatory.

- Reseller: The reseller this billing profile belongs to.
- Handle: A unique, permanently fixed string which is used to attach the billing profile to a VoIP account or SIP peering contract.
- Name: A free form string used to identify the billing profile in the Admin Panel. This may be changed at any time.
- Prepaid: Enables prepaid accounting for this profile as opposed to normal post-paid mode.
- Interval charge: A base fee for the billing interval, specifying a monetary amount (represented as a floating point number) in whatever currency you want to use.
- Interval free time: If you want to include free calling time in your billing profile, you may specify the number of seconds that are available every billing interval. See *Creating Billing Fees* below on how to select destinations which may be called using the free time.
- Interval free cash: Same as for *interval free time* above, but specifies a monetary amount which may be spent on outgoing calls. This may be used for example to implement a minimum turnover for a contract, by setting the *interval charge* and *interval free cash* to the same values.
- Fraud monthly limit: The monthly fraud detection limit (in Cent) for accounts with this billing profile. If the call fees of an account reach this limit within a billing interval, an action can be triggered.
- Fraud monthly lock: a choice of *none, foreign, outgoing, incoming, global.* Specifies a lock level which will be used to lock the account and his subscribers when *fraud monthly limit* is exceeded.

- Fraud monthly notify: An email address or comma-separated list of email addresses that will receive notifications when *fraud monthly limit* is exceeded.
- Fraud daily limit: The fraud detection limit (in Cent) for accounts with this billing profile. If the call fees of an account reach this limit within a calendar day, an action can be triggered.
- Fraud daily lock: a choice of *none, foreign, outgoing, incoming, global*. Specifies a lock level which will be used to lock the account and his subscribers when *fraud daily limit* is exceeded.
- Fraud daily notify: An email address or comma-separated list of email addresses that will receive notifications when *fraud daily limit* is exceeded.
- Currency: The currency symbol for your currency. Any UTF-8 character may be used and will be printed in web interfaces.
- VAT rate: The percentage of value added tax for all fees in the billing profile. Currently for informational purpose only and not used further.
- VAT included: Whether VAT is included in the fees entered in web forms or uploaded to the platform. Currently for informational purpose only and not used further.

8.1.2 Creating Billing Fees

Each Billing Profile holds multiple Billing Fees.

To set up billing fees, click on the *Fees* button of the billing profile you want to configure. Billing fees may be uploaded using a configurable CSV file format, or entered directly via the web interface by clicking *Create Fee Entry*. To configure the CSV field order for the file upload, rearrange the entries in the *www_admin* \rightarrow *fees_csv* \rightarrow *element_order* array in */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml* and execute the command ngcpcfg apply. For input via the web interface, just fill in the text fields accordingly.

						👗 Logged in as administrator 🛛 Logout
sip:wise						
SID:MISE	Create l	Billing Fees				× tings -
Billin		Zone			Search:	
			#	Zone	Zone Detail	
			2	test	test zone	2
← Back			Showing 1 to 1 of 1 ent	ries	create "Crea	ed by te Zone" button below ≝
Billing Zone						1 Create Zone
		Source				
# -	3	Destination	.*			
* No data a	4	Direction	outbound			•
Showing 01	OI	npeak init rate	0			
						Save

In both cases, the following information may be specified independently for every destination:

- Zone: A zone for a group of destinations. May be used to group destinations for simplified display, e.g. on invoices. (e.g. foreign zone 1)
- Source: The source pattern. This is a POSIX regular expression matching the complete source URI (e.g. ^.*@sip\. example\.org\$ or ^someone@sip\.sipwise\.com\$ or just . to match everything). If you leave this field empty, the default pattern . matching everything will be set implicitly. Internally, this pattern will be matched against the <source_cli>@ <source_domain> fields of the CDR.
- Destination: The destination pattern. This is a POSIX regular expression matching the complete destination URI (e.g. some one@sip\.example\.org or ^43). This field must be set.
- Direction: Outbound for standard origination fees (applies to callers placing a call and getting billed for that) or Inbound for termination fees (applies to callees if you want to charge them for receiving various calls, e.g. for 800-numbers). *If in doubt, use Outbound*. If you upload fees via CSV files, use out or in, respectively.

✓ Important

The {source, destination, direction} combination needs to be unique for a billing profile. The system will return an error if such a set is specified twice, both for the file upload and the input via the web interface.

Important

There are several internal services (vsc, conference, voicebox, fax2mail) which will need a specific destination entry with a domain-based destination. If you don't want to charge the same (or nothing) for those services, add a fee for destination \.local\$ there. If you want to charge different amounts for those services, break it down into separate fee entries for @fax2mail\.local\$, @vsc\.local\$, @conference\.local\$ and @voicebox\.local\$ with the according fees. NOT CREATING EITHER THE CATCH-ALL FEE OR THE SEPARATE FEES FOR THE . local DOMAIN WILL BREAK YOUR RATING PROCESS!

- **Onpeak init rate**: The rate for the first rating interval in cent (of whatever currency, represented as a floating point number) per second. Applicable to calls during onpeak hours.
- Onpeak init interval: The duration of the first billing interval, in seconds. Applicable to calls during onpeak hours.
- **Onpeak follow rate**: The rate for subsequent rating intervals in cent (of whatever currency, represented as a floating point number) per second. Applicable to calls during onpeak hours. Defaults to *onpeak init rate*.
- **Onpeak follow interval**: The duration of subsequent billing intervals, in seconds. Applicable to calls during onpeak hours. Defaults to *onpeak init interval*.
- Offpeak init rate: The rate for the first rating interval in cent (of whatever currency, represented as a floating point number) per second. Applicable to calls during off-peak hours. Defaults to *onpeak init rate*.
- Offpeak init interval: The duration of the first billing interval, in seconds. Applicable to calls during off-peak hours. Defaults to onpeak init interval.
- Offpeak follow rate: The rate for subsequent rating intervals in cent (of whatever currency, represented as a floating point number) per second. Applicable to calls during off-peak hours. Defaults to offpeak init rate if that one is specified, or to onpeak follow rate otherwise.
- Offpeak follow interval: The duration of subsequent billing intervals, in seconds. Applicable to calls during off-peak hours. Defaults to offpeak init interval if that one is specified, or to onpeak follow interval otherwise.
- Use free time: Specifies whether free time minutes may be used when calling this destination. May be specified in the file upload as 0, n[o], f[alse] and 1, y[es], t[rue] respectively.

8.1.3 Creating Off-Peak Times

To be able to differentiate between on-peak and off-peak calls, the platform stores off-peak times for every billing profile based on weekdays and/or calendar days. To edit the settings for a billing profile, go to *Settings* \rightarrow *Billing* and press the *Peaktimes* button on the billing profile you want to configure.

To set off-peak times for a weekday, click on *Edit* next to the according weekday. You will be presented with two input fields which both receive a timestamp in the form of *hh:mm:ss* specifying a time of day for the start and end of the off-peak period. If any of the fields is left empty, the system will automatically insert 00:00:00 (*start* field) or *23:59:59* (*end* field). Click on *Add* to store the setting in the database. You may create more than one off-peak period per weekday. To delete a range, just click *Delete* next to the entry. Click the *close* icon when done.

				Logged in as administra	ator Logout
sip:wise					
sip:wise	Edit Monday			×	tings 🔻
Off-p	00:00:00	07:	59:59	â	
	00.00.00				
	18:00:00	L	59:59	3 Add	
← Back	1		2		
- Daven					
Weekda	ays				
Weekday	1	-	Start - End		
Monday			00:00:00 – 07:59:59		
Tuesday					
We does a					
Wednesd	ay				
Thursday					
Friday					
Saturday					

To specify off-peak ranges based on calendar dates, click on *Create Special Off-Peak Date*. Enter a date in the form of *YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss* into the *Start Date/Time* input field and *End Date/Time* input field to define a range for the off-peak period.

sip:wise	
Create Date Definitions	× tings →
Off-p 1 Start Date/Time 2013-12-24	00:00:00
2 End Date/Time 2013-12-24 2	23:59:59
← Back	
Weekda	3 Save
Weekday	Start - End
Monday	00:00:00 - 07:59:59 18:00:00 - 23:59:59
Tuesday	
Wednesday	
Thursday	
Friday	

8.1.4 Prepaid Accounting

In a normal post-paid accounting scenario, each customer accumulates debt in their billing account, which at the end of the billing interval is then billed to the customer. A *prepaid* billing profile reverses this sequence: the customer first has to provide credit to their account balance, and the costs for all calls are then deducted from that account balance. Once the balance reaches zero, no further calls from this customer are accepted, with the exception of free calls. Additionally, if the balance drops to zero while any calls are currently active, NGCP will disconnect those calls as soon as that happens.

With prepaid billing enabled, all details of the billing profile and all details of the billing fees behave as they normally do, including interval free time. If any interval free time is given, the free time will be used before the account's credit is.

Important

For technical reasons, the system can make the distinction between on-peak and off-peak times only at call establishment time. In other words, if the currently active call fee at the moment when the call is established is an off-peak fee, then the same off-peak fee will remain active for the whole length of this call, even if the call actually transitions into an on-peak fee (and vice versa).

) Important

For technical reasons, prepaid billing can't charge local endpoint calls such calls to Voicebox check, VSC calls or calls to Conference Room.

8.1.5 Fraud Detection and Locking

The NGCP supports a fraud detection feature, which is designed to detect accounts causing unusually high customer costs, and then to perform one of several actions upon those accounts. This feature can be enabled and configured through two sets of billing profile options described in Section 8.1.1, namely the monthly (*fraud monthly limit, fraud monthly lock* and *fraud monthly notify*) and daily limits (*fraud daily limit, fraud daily lock* and *fraud daily notify*). Either monthly/daily limits or both of them can be active at the same time.

Once a day, shortly after midnight local time, a background script automatically checks all accounts which are linked to a billing profile enabled for fraud detection, and selects those which have caused a higher cost than the *fraud monthly limit* configured in the billing profile, within the currently active billing interval (e.g. in the current month), or a higher cost than the *fraud daily limit* configured in the billing profile, within the calendar day. It then proceeds to perform at least one of the following actions on those accounts:

- If **fraud lock** is set to anything other than *none*, it will lock the account accordingly (e.g. if **fraud lock** is set to *outgoing*, the account will be locked for all outgoing calls).
- If anything is listed in **fraud notify**, an email will be sent to the email addresses configured. The email will contain information about which account is affected, which subscribers within that account are affected, the current account balance and the configured fraud limit, and also whether or not the account was locked in accordance with the **fraud lock** setting. It should be noted that this email is meant for the administrators or accountants etc., and not for the customer.



Important

You can override these settings on a per-account basis via SOAP or the Admin interface.



Caution

Accounts that were automatically locked by the fraud detection feature will **not** be automatically unlocked when the next billing interval starts. This has to be done manually through the administration panel or through the provisioning interface.

Important

If fraud detection is configured to only send an email and not lock the affected accounts, it will continue to do so for over-limit accounts every day. The accounts must either be locked in order to stop the emails (only currently active accounts are considered when the script looks for over-limit accounts) or some other action to resolve the conflict must be taken, such as disabling fraud detection for those accounts.

8.2 Billing Data Export

Regular billing data export is done using CSV (*comma separated values*) files which may be downloaded from the platform using the *cdrexport* user which has been created during the installation.

There are two types of exports. One is *CDR* (Call Detail Records) used to charge for calls made by subscribers, and the other is *EDR* (Event Detail Records) used to charge for provisioning events like enabling certain features.

8.2.1 File Name Format

In order to be able to easily identify billing files, the file names are constructed by the following fixed-length fields:

```
<prefix><separator><version><separator><timestamp><separator><sequence number>< \colored suffix>
```

The definition of the specific fields is as follows:

File name element	Length	Description
<prefix></prefix>	7	A fixed string. Always sipwise.
<separator></separator>	1	A fixed character. Always
<version></version>	3	The format version, a three digit number. Currently 007.
<timestamp></timestamp>	14	The file creation timestamp in the format YYYYMMDDhhmmss.
<sequence number=""></sequence>	equence number> 10 A unique 10-digit zero-padded sequence number for quick identific	
<suffix></suffix>	4	A fixed string. Always .cdr or .edr.

Table 3: CDR/EDR export file name format

A valid example filename for a CDR billing file created at 2012-03-10 14:30:00 and being the 42nd file exported by the system, is: sipwise_007_20130310143000_000000042.cdr

8.2.2 File Format

Each billing file consists of three parts: one header line, zero to 5000 body lines and one trailer line.

File Header Format

The billing file header is one single line, which is constructed by the following fields:

<version>, <number of records>

The definition of the specific fields is as follows:

Body Element	Length	Туре	Description
<version></version>	3	zero-	The format version. Currently 007.
		padded	
		uint	
<number of="" records=""></number>	4	zero-	The number of body lines contained in the file.
		padded	
		uint	

Table 4: CDR/EDR export file header line format

A valid example for a Header is:

007,0738

File Body Format for Call Detail Records (CDR)

The body of a CDR consists of a minimum of zero and a maximum of 5000 lines. Each line holds one call detail record in CSV format and is constructed by the following fields, all of them enclosed in single quotes:

Table 5: CDR export file body line format

Body Element	Length	Туре	Description
<id></id>	1-10	uint	Internal CDR id.
<update_time></update_time>	19	timestamp	Timestamp of last modification.
<source_user_id></source_user_id>	36	string	Internal UUID of calling party subscriber.
<source_provider_id></source_provider_id>	1-255	string	Internal ID of calling party provider.
<source_ext_subscriber_< td=""><td>0-255</td><td>string</td><td>External ID of calling party subscriber.</td></source_ext_subscriber_<>	0-255	string	External ID of calling party subscriber.
id>			
<source_subscriber_id></source_subscriber_id>	1-10	uint	Internal ID of calling party subscriber.
<source_ext_account_id></source_ext_account_id>	0-255	string	External ID of calling party VoIP account.
<source_account_id></source_account_id>	1-10	uint	Internal ID of calling party VoIP account.
<source_user></source_user>	1-255	string	SIP username of calling party.
<source_domain></source_domain>	1-255	string	SIP domain of calling party.
<source_cli></source_cli>	1-64	string	CLI of calling party in E.164 format.
<source_clir></source_clir>	1	uint	1 for calls with CLIR, 0 otherwise.
<source_ip></source_ip>	0-64	string	IP Address of the calling party.
<destination_user_id></destination_user_id>	1 / 36	string	Internal UUID of called party subscriber or 0 if callee is
			not local.
<destination_provider_< td=""><td>1-255</td><td>string</td><td>Internal ID of called party provider.</td></destination_provider_<>	1-255	string	Internal ID of called party provider.
id>			
<dest_ext_subscriber_id></dest_ext_subscriber_id>	0-255	string	External ID of called party subscriber.

Table 5: (continued)

Body Element	Length	Туре	Description
<dest_subscriber_id></dest_subscriber_id>	1-10	uint	Internal ID of called party subscriber.
<dest_ext_account_id></dest_ext_account_id>	0-255	string	External ID of called party VoIP account.
<destination_account_id></destination_account_id>	1-10	uint	Internal ID of called party VoIP account.
<destination_user></destination_user>	1-255	string	Final SIP username of called party.
<destination_domain></destination_domain>	1-255	string	Final SIP domain of called party.
<destination_user_in></destination_user_in>	1-255	string	Incoming SIP username of called party.
<destination_domain_in></destination_domain_in>	1-255	string	Incoming SIP domain of called party.
<dialed_digits></dialed_digits>	1-255	string	The user-part of the SIP Request URI as received by the
			soft-switch.
<peer_auth_user></peer_auth_user>	0-255	string	User to authenticate towards peer.
<peer_auth_realm></peer_auth_realm>	0-255	string	Realm to authenticate towards peer.
<call_type></call_type>	3-4	string	The type of the call - one of:
			call: normal call
			cfu: call forward unconditional
			cft: call forward timeout
			cfb: call forward busy
			cfna: call forward no answer
<call_status></call_status>	2-7	string	The final call status - one of:
			ok: successful call
			busy: callee busy
			noanswer: no answer from callee
			cancel: cancel from caller
			offline callee offline
			timeout: no reply from callee
			other: unspecified, see <call_code> for details</call_code>
<call_code></call_code>	3	uint	The final SIP status code.
<init_time></init_time>	23	timestamp	Timestamp of call initiation (invite received from caller).
			Seconds include fractional part (3 decimals).
<start_time></start_time>	23	timestamp	Timestamp of call establishment (final response received
			from callee). Seconds include fractional part (3
			decimals).
<duration></duration>	4-11	fixed	Length of call (beginning at start_time) in seconds
		precision	with 3 decimals.
<call_id></call_id>	1-255	string	The SIP call-id.
<rating_status></rating_status>	2-7	string	The internal rating status - one of:
-			unrated: not rated
			ok: successfully rated
			failed: error while rating
			Currently always ok or unrated, depending on
			whether rating is enabled or not.
<rated_at></rated_at>	0 / 19	timestamp	Timestamp of rating or empty if not rated.

Table 5: (continued)

Body Element	Length	Туре	Description
<source_carrier_cost></source_carrier_cost>	4-11	fixed	The originating carrier cost or empty if not rated. In cent
		precision	with two decimals. Only available in system
			exports, not for resellers.
<source_customer_cost></source_customer_cost>	4-11	fixed	The originating customer cost or empty if not rated. In
		precision	cent with two decimals.
<source_carrier_zone></source_carrier_zone>	0-127	string	The originating carrier billing zone or empty if not rated.
			Only available in system exports, not
			for resellers.
<source_customer_zone></source_customer_zone>	0-127	string	The originating customer billing zone or empty if not
		Ū	rated.
<source_carrier_destinat< td=""><td>0-127</td><td>string</td><td>The originating carrier billing destination or empty if not</td></source_carrier_destinat<>	0-127	string	The originating carrier billing destination or empty if not
ion>		Ū	rated. Only available in system exports,
			not for resellers.
<source_customer_destina< td=""><td>0-127</td><td>string</td><td>The originating customer billing destination or empty if</td></source_customer_destina<>	0-127	string	The originating customer billing destination or empty if
tion>		Ū	not rated.
<pre><source_carrier_free_ti< pre=""></source_carrier_free_ti<></pre>	1-10	uint	The number of originating free time seconds used on
me>			carrier side or empty if not rated. Only available
			in system exports, not for resellers.
<pre><source_customer_free_ti< pre=""></source_customer_free_ti<></pre>	1-10	uint	The number of originating free time seconds used from
me>	1.10	unit	the customer's account balance or empty if not rated.
<pre><destination_carrier_co< pre=""></destination_carrier_co<></pre>	4-11	fixed	The termination carrier cost or empty if not rated. In cent
st>		precision	with two decimals. Only available in system
		providion	exports, not for resellers.
<destination_customer_co< td=""><td>4-11</td><td>fixed</td><td>The termination customer cost or empty if not rated. In</td></destination_customer_co<>	4-11	fixed	The termination customer cost or empty if not rated. In
st>		precision	cent with two decimals.
<pre></pre>	0-127	string	The termination carrier billing zone or empty if not rated.
ne>	0 127	ounig	Only available in system exports, not
			for resellers.
<pre><destination_customer_zo< pre=""></destination_customer_zo<></pre>	0-127	string	The termination customer billing zone or empty if not
ne>	0 127	ounig	rated.
<pre></pre>	0-127	string	The termination carrier billing destination or empty if not
tination>	0-127	String	rated. Only available in system exports,
			not for resellers.
(destination quateman de	0 1 2 7	otring	The termination customer billing destination or empty if
<pre><destination_customer_de stination=""></destination_customer_de></pre>	0-127	string	not rated.
	1 10	uint	The number of termination free time seconds used on
<pre><destination_carrier_fre <="" pre=""></destination_carrier_fre></pre>	1-10	uint	
e_time>			carrier side or empty if not rated. Only available
		• .	in system exports, not for resellers.
<pre><destination_customer_fr< pre=""></destination_customer_fr<></pre>	1-10	uint	The number of termination free time seconds used from
ee_time>			the customer's account balance or empty if not rated.

Body Element	Length	Туре	Description			
<source_reseller_cost></source_reseller_cost>	4-11	fixed	The originating reseller cost or empty if not rated. In cent			
		precision	with two decimals. Only available in system			
			exports, not for resellers.			
<pre><source_reseller_zone></source_reseller_zone></pre>	0-127	string	The originating reseller billing zone or empty if not rated.			
			Only available in system exports, not			
			for resellers.			
<source_reseller_destina< td=""><td>0-127</td><td>string</td><td>The originating reseller billing destination or empty if not</td></source_reseller_destina<>	0-127	string	The originating reseller billing destination or empty if not			
tion>			rated.Only available in system exports,			
			not for resellers.			
<source_reseller_free_ti< td=""><td>1-10</td><td>uint</td><td>The number of originating free time seconds used from</td></source_reseller_free_ti<>	1-10	uint	The number of originating free time seconds used from			
me>			the reseller's account balance or empty if not rated.			
			Only available in system exports, not			
			for resellers.			
<pre><destination_reseller_co< pre=""></destination_reseller_co<></pre>	4-11	fixed	The termination reseller cost or empty if not rated. In			
st>		precision	cent with two decimals. Only available in			
			system exports, not for resellers.			
<pre><destination_reseller_zo< pre=""></destination_reseller_zo<></pre>	0-127	string	The termination reseller billing zone or empty if not rated.			
ne>			Only available in system exports, not			
			for resellers.			
<pre><destination_reseller_de< pre=""></destination_reseller_de<></pre>	0-127	string	The termination reseller billing destination or empty if not			
stination>			rated.Only available in system exports,			
			not for resellers.			
<pre><destination_reseller_fr< pre=""></destination_reseller_fr<></pre>	1-10	uint	The number of termination free time seconds used from			
ee_time>			the reseller's account balance or empty if not rated.			
			Only available in system exports, not			
			for resellers.			
<line_terminator></line_terminator>	1	string	A fixed character. Always n (special char LF - ASCII			
			0x0A).			

Table 5: (continued)

A valid example of one body line of a rated CDR is (line breaks added for clarity):

```
'15','2013-03-26 22:09:11','a84508a8-d256-4c80-a84e-820099a827b0','1','','1','',
'2','testuser1','192.168.51.133','4311001','0','192.168.51.1',
'94d85b63-8f4b-43f0-b3b0-221c9e3373f2','1','','3','','4','testuser3',
'192.168.51.133','testuser3','192.168.51.133','testuser3','','','call','ok','200',
'2013-03-25 20:24:50.890','2013-03-25 20:24:51.460','10.880','44449842',
'ok','2013-03-25 20:25:27','0.00','24.00','onnet','testzone','platform internal',
'testzone','0','0','0.00','200.00','','foo','','foo','0','0',
```

The format of the CDR export files generated for resellers (as opposed to the complete system-wide export) is identical except for a few missing fields. Reseller CDR CSV files don't contain the fields for *carrier* or *reseller* ratings, neither in *source* nor *destination* direction. Thus, the reseller CSV files have 16 fewer fields.

File Body Format for Event Detail Records (EDR)

The body of a EDR consists of a minimum of zero and a maximum of 5000 lines. Each line holds one call detail record in CSV format and is constructed by the following fields, all of them enclosed in single quotes:

Body Element	Length	Туре	Description
<event_id></event_id>	1-10	uint	Internal EDR id.
<pre><event_type></event_type></pre>	1-255	string	The type of the event - one of:
			start_profile: A subscriber profile has been newly
			assigned to a subscriber.
			end_profile: A subscriber profile has been removed
			from a subscriber.
			update_profile: A subscriber profile has been
			changed for a subscriber.
			start_huntgroup: A subscriber has been
			provisioned as group.
			end_huntgroup: A subscriber has been
			deprovisioned as group.
			<pre>start_ivr: A subscriber has a new call-forward to</pre>
			auto-attendant set.
			end_ivr: A subscriber has removed a call-forward to
			auto-attendant.
<customer_external_id></customer_external_id>	0-255	string	The external customer ID as provisioned for the
			subscriber.
<contact_company></contact_company>	0-255	string	The company name of the customer's contact.
<subscriber_external_id></subscriber_external_id>	0-255	string	The external subscriber ID as provisioned for the
			subscriber.
<subscriber_number></subscriber_number>	0-255	string	The voip number of the subscriber with the highest ID
			(DID or primary number).

Table 6: EDR export file body line form	at
Table of EBIT expert ne beay mie form	u

Table 6: (continued)

Body Element	Length	Туре	Description
<old_status></old_status>	0-255	string	The old status of the event. Depending on the
			event_type:
			start_profile: Empty.
			end_profile: The profile id of the profile which got
			removed from the subscriber.
			update_profile: The old profile id which got
			updated.
			start_huntgroup: Empty.
			end_huntgroup: The profile id of the group which got
			deprovisioned.
			start_ivr: Empty.
			end_ivr: Empty.
<new_status></new_status>	0-255	string	The new status of the event. Depending on the
			event_type:
			start_profile: The profile id which got assigned to
			the subscriber.
			end_profile: Empty.
			update_profile: The new profile id which got
			updated.
			start_huntgroup: The current profile id assigned to
			the group subscriber.
			end_huntgroup: The current profile id assigned to
			the group subscriber.
			start_ivr: Empty.
			end_ivr: Empty.
<timestamp></timestamp>	0-255	string	The time when the event occured.
<line_terminator></line_terminator>	1	string	A fixed character. Always n (special char LF - ASCII
			0x0A).

A valid example of one body line of an EDR is (line breaks added for clarity):

"1","start_profile","sipwise_ext_customer_id_4","Sipwise GmbH", "sipwise_ext_subscriber_id_44","436667778","","1","2014-06-19 11:34:31"

File Trailer Format

The billing file trailer is one single line, which is constructed by the following fields:

<md5 sum>

The <md5 sum> is a 32 character hexadecimal MD5 hash of the Header and Body.

To validate the billing file, one must remove the Trailer before computing the MD5 sum of the file. An example bash script to validate the integrity of the file is given below:

```
#!/bin/sh
error() { echo $@; exit 1; }
test -n "$1" || error "Usage: $0 <cdr-file>"
test -f "$1" || error "File '$1' not found"
TMPFILE="/tmp/$(basename "$1").$$"
MD5="$(sed -rn '$ s/^([a-z0-9]{32}).*$/\1/i p' "$1") $TMPFILE"
sed '$d' "$1" > "$TMPFILE"
echo "$MD5" | md5sum -c -
rm -f "$TMPFILE"
```

Given the script is located in cdr-md5.sh and the CDR-file is sipwise_001_20071110123000_00000004.cdr, the output of the integrity check for an intact CDR file would be:

```
$ ./cdr-md5.sh sipwise_001_20071110123000_000000004.cdr
/tmp/sipwise_001_20071110123000_000000004.cdr: OK
```

If the file has been altered during transmission, the output of the integrity check would be:

```
$ ./cdr-md5.sh sipwise_001_20071110123000_000000004.cdr
/tmp/sipwise_001_20071110123000_000000004.cdr: FAILED
md5sum: WARNING: 1 of 1 computed checksum did NOT match
```

8.2.3 File Transfer

Billing files are created twice per hour at minutes 25 and 55 and are stored in the home directory of the cdrexport user. If the amount of records within the transmission interval exceeds the threshold of 5000 records per file, multiple billing files are created. If no billing records are found for an interval, a billing file without body data is constructed for easy detection of lost billing files on the 3rd party side.

CDR and EDR files are fetched by a 3rd party billing system using SFTP or SCP with either public key or password authentication using the username cdrexport.

If public key authentication is chosen, the public key file has to be stored in the file ~/.ssh/authorized_keys2 below the home directory of the cdrexport user. Otherwise, a password has to be set for the user.

The 3rd party billing system is responsible for deleting CDR files after fetching them.

Note

The cdrexport user is kept in a jailed environment on the system, so it has only access to a very limited set of commandline utilities.

9 Invoices and invoice templates

The sip:provider PRO allows to generate and send customer invoices for each billing period based on Calls Detailed Records (CDR). Generated invoices can be sent to customers emails using invoice generation script Section 9.3.

Invoices present billing information from the reseller point of view. Recipients of the invoices are customers. Invoices include information related to the calls made by subscribers associated with the customer.

By default invoice contains information about billing plan fixed fee, calls zones fees and calls detailed information.

Content and vision of the invoices are customizable by invoice templates Section 9.2.

Note

The sip:provider PRO generates invoices in pdf format.

9.1 Invoices management

Invoices can be requested for generation, searched, downloaded and deleted in the invoices interface.

				Logged in as adm		
	CP Dashboard					
		ñ	all Monitoring & S	Statistics *	🔛 Settings 👻	
Invoices						
← Back	★ Create Invoice					
Show 5	♥ entries			Search:		
# ~	Customer #	Customer Email	Serial			
1	9	ipeshinskaya@sipwise.com	INV201407	0000001	🛓 Downlo	ad X Delete
2	9	ipeshinskaya@sipwise.com	INV201408	0000002		
4	143	ipeshinskaya@sipwise.com	INV201408	0000004		
Showing 1 to 3 of	3 entries				-	- 1

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved

To request invoice generation for the particular customer and period press "Create invoice" button. On the invoice creation form following parameters are available for selection:

- Template: any of existent invoice template can be selected for the invoice generation.
- Customer: owner of the billing account, recipient of the invoice.
- **Invoice period**: billing period. Can be specified only as one calendar month. Calls with start time between first and last second of the period will be considered for the invoice

All form fields are mandatory.

				🔺 Logged in as administrator 🛛 🤤	Language 👻 Logout
sip:wise NGCP Dash	board		ń	.al Monitoring & Statistics 👻	
Invoices	Create Invoice			×	
	Template		Search:		
	#	Reseller	Name		
← Back ★ Create	Showing 1 to	1 of 1 entries	(m) (m)		
# A Customer	Customer #	Reseller Contact Email	Search: 175 External #	Status	
1 5	175	default sipwise@example.c		active	
Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries	Showing 1 to	1 of 1 entries (filtered from 20 total entries)	~ ~		. 1
		уу-ти	n	Create Contract	
	Invoice Period 2015-04				
	C Apr	✓ 2015✓ ○		Save	
	Today	Done			

Generated invoice can be downloaded as pdf file.

		– + Autor	natic Zoom 🔹		22 0	B H	»
■ • Page 1 d2	Your Monthly Statem		£	Invoice Nr. Invoice Nr. Invoice Nr. Invoice Nr. Invoice Proio Invoice Pr			
	Dear Customer.						
	For our services provided in the pe	riod of 2015-03-01 to 2015-	03-31, we invoice the follo	wing items:			
	Recurring Fees						
	Name	Quantity	Unit Price	Total Price in			
	Default Billing Profile	1	0.00	0.00			
	Total			0.00			
	Call Summary						
	Zone	Quantity	Usage	Total Price in			
	Total			0.00			
							~

To do it press button "Download" against invoice in the invoice management interface.

Respectively press on the button "Delete" to delete invoice.

9.2 Invoice templates

Invoice template defines structure and look of the generated invoices. The sip:provider PRO allows to create some invoice templates. Multiple invoice templates can be used to send invoices to the different customers using different languages.

Important

At least one invoice template should be created to enable invoice generation. Each customer has to be associated to one of the existent invoice template, otherwise invoices will be not generated for this customer.

Customer can be linked to the invoice template in the customer interface.

9.2.1 Invoice Templates management

Invoice templates can be searched, created, edited and deleted in the invoice templates management interface.

				Logged in as administrator & Language V Logout
sip:wise	NGCP Dashboard			♣ all Monitoring & Statistics ▼
Invoid	e Templates			
← Back Search:	★ Create Invoice Template	_		
#	A Reseller	Name	Туре	
1	default	Default	svg	🔀 Edit Meta 🛛 🖾 Edit Content 🛛 🗙 Delete

© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.

Invoice template creation is separated on two steps:

- Register new invoice template meta information.
- · Edit content (template itself) of the invoice template.

To register new invoice template press "Create Invoice Template" button.

On the invoice template meta information form following parameters can be specified:

• **Reseller**: reseller who owns this invoice template. Please note, that it doesn't mean that the template will be used for the reseller customers by default. After creation, invoice template still need to be linked to the reseller customers.

- Name: unique invoice template name to differentiate invoice templates if there are some.
- Type: currently sip:provider PRO supports only svg format of the invoice templates.

All form fields are mandatory.

sip:ເມເຣະ NGCP Dashboar	d		ń	""I Monitoring & Statistics 👻	
Invoice Templat	ate Invoice Template			×	
	Reseller		Search: 424093730 3		
	#	Name Contr	act # Status		
← Back ★ Create	7	test reseller 131 1424093730 3	active		
Search:	Showing 1 to 1 o	f 1 entries (filtered from 8 total entrie	s) ←	1 → ⇒	
# ^ Reselle				Create Reseller	
1 default	Name English invoice	template The invoice templa no	te type (only svg for w).		
Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries	Type SVG		*		- 1
				Save	
© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserve					

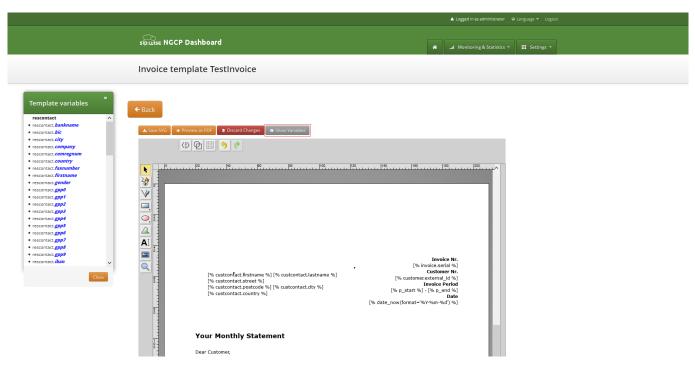
After registering new invoice template you can change invoice template structure in WYSIWYG SVG editor and preview result of the invoice generation based on the template.

9.2.2 Invoice Template content

Invoice template is a XML SVG source, which describes content, look and position of the text lines, images or other invoice template elements. The sip:provider PRO provides embedded WYSIWYG SVG editor svg-edit 2.6 to customize default template. The sip:provider PRO svg-edit has some changes in layers management, image edit, user interface, but this basic introduction still may be useful.

Template refers to the owner reseller contact ("rescontact"), customer contract ("customer"), customer contact ("customtact"), billing profile ("billprof"), invoice ("invoice") data as variables in the "[%%]" mark-up with detailed information accessed as field name after point e.g. [%invoice.serial%]. During invoice generation all variables or other special tokens in the "[% %]" mark-ups will be replaced by their database values.

Press on "Show variables" button on invoice template content page to see full list of variables with the fields:



You can add/change/remove embedded variables references directly in main svg-edit window. To edit text line in svg-edit main window double click on the text and place cursor on desired position in the text.

After implementation of the desired template changes, invoice template should be saved Section 9.2.3.

To return to the sip:provider PRO invoice template default content you can press on the "Discard changes" button.

Important

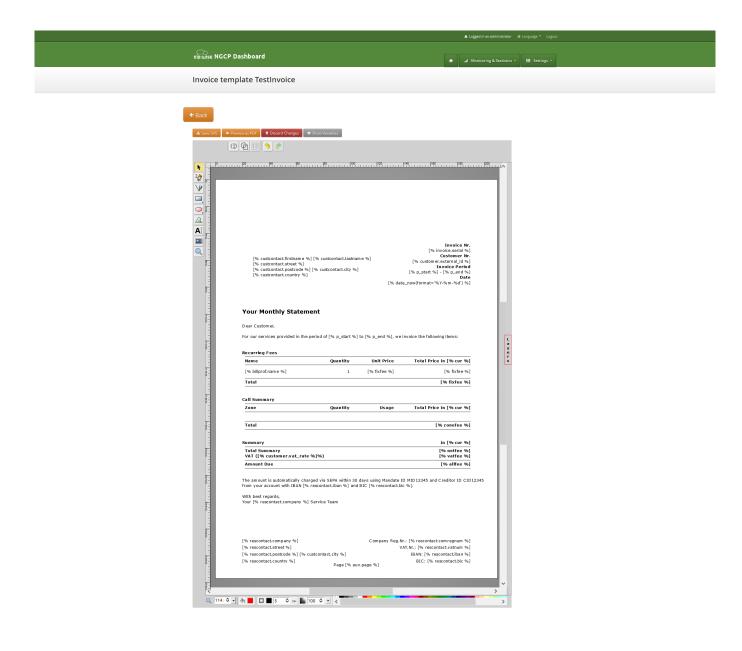
"Discard changes" operation can't be undone.

Layers

Default template contains three groups elements (<g/>), which can be thinked of as pages, or in terms of svg-edit - layers. Layers are:

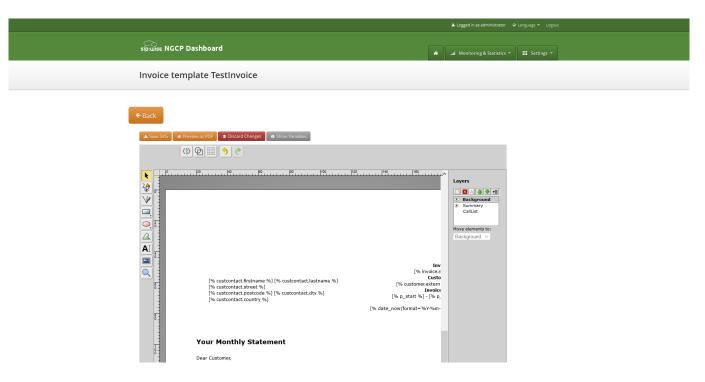
- Background: special layer, which will be repeated as background for every other page of the invoice.
- Summary: page with a invoice summary.
- · CallList: page with calls made in a invoice period. Is invisible by default.

To see all invoice template layers, press on "Layers" vertical sign on right side of the svg-edit interface:





Side panel with layers list will be shown.

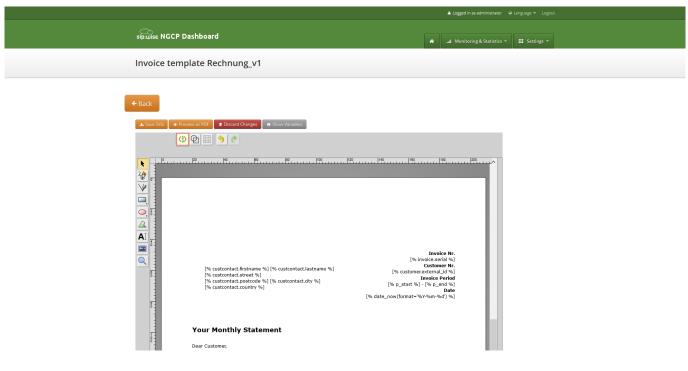


One of the layers is active, and its element can be edited in the main svg-edit window. Currently active layer's name is **bold** in the layers list. The layers may be visible or invisible. Visible layers have "eye" icon left of their names in the layers list.

To make a layer active, click on its name in the layers list. If the layer was invisible, its elements became visible on activation. Thus you can see mixed elements of some layers, then you can switch off visibility of other layers by click on their "eye" icons. It is good idea to keep visibility of the "Background" layer on, so look of the generated page will be seen.

Edit SVG XML source

Sometimes it may be convenient to edit svg source directly and svg-edit allows to do it. After press on the <svg> icon in the top left corner of the svg-edit interface:



SVG XML source of the invoice template will be shown.

SVG source can be edited in place or just copy-pasted as usual text.

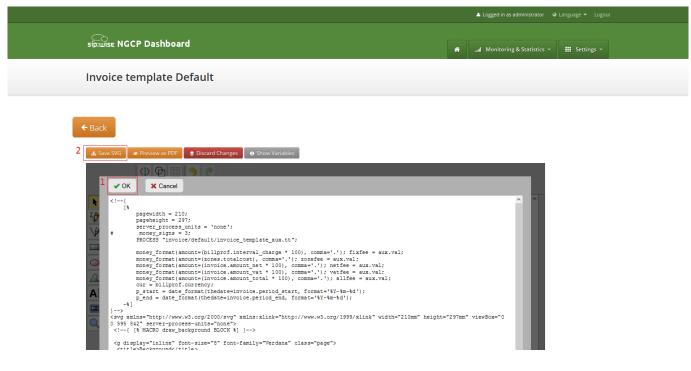
Note

Template keeps sizes and distances in pixels.

Important

When edit svg xml source, please change very carefully and thinkfully things inside special comment mark-up "<!--{ }- \rightarrow ". Otherwise invoice generation may be broken. Please be sure that document structure repeats default invoice template: has the same groups (<g/>>) elements on the top level, text inside special comments mark-up "<!--{ }- \rightarrow " preserved or changed appropriately, svg xml structure is correct.

To save your changes in the svg xml source, first press "OK" button on the top left corner of the source page:



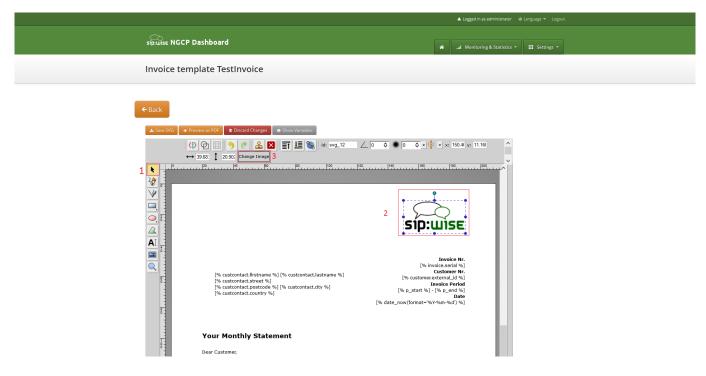
And then save invoice template changes Section 9.2.3.

Note

You can copy and keep the svg source of your template as a file on the disk before start experimenting with the template. Later you will be able to return to this version replacing svg source.

Change logo image

- Make sure that "Select tool" is active.
- Select default logo, clicking on the logo image.
- · Press "Change image" button, which should appear on the top toolbar.



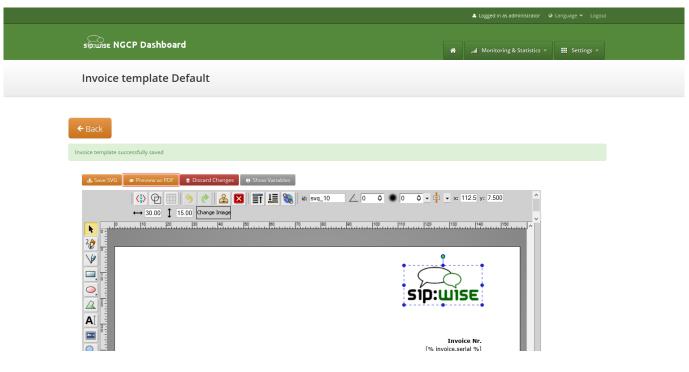
After image uploaded save invoice template changes Section 9.2.3.

9.2.3 Save and preview invoice template content.

To save invoice template content changes press button "Save SVG".

	Logged in as administrator 🛛 Language 👻 Logout
sip:Wise NGCP Dashboard	★ al Monitoring & Statistics * ## Settings *
Invoice template Default	
← Back	
▲ Save SVG ● Preview as PDF ● Discard Changes ● Show Variables (\$) (\$) (*) (*)	
	sip:wise
[% custcontact.firstname %] [% custcontact.lastname %] [% custcontact.street %] [% custcontact.street %]	Invoice Nr. [% invoice.serial %] Customer Nr. [% customer.external_id %] Invoice Period

You will see message about successfully saved template. You can preview your invoice look in PDF format. Press on "Preview as PDF" button.



Invoice preview will be opened in the new window.

Note

Example fake data will be used for preview generation.

: 1 of 4		- + Autor	naticZoom 🗧		2 0 D
				SIP:WISE	
	Customerfirst Customerlast Customerstreet 12/3 12345 Customercity Customercountry			Invoice Nr. 1234567 Customer Nr. Resext1234567800 Invoice Period 2015-04-01 - 2015-04-30 Date 2015-04-05	
You	ur Monthly Statemen	ıt			
Dear	Customer,				
For c	ur services provided in the period	of 2015-04-01 to 2015-	04-30, we invoice the foll	owing items:	
Rec	Irring Fees				
Na	me	Quantity	Unit Price	Total Price in EUR	
Tes	Billing Profile	1	29.90	29.90	
Tot	al			29.90	

9.3 Invoices generation

Except invoices generation on demand using web interface, invoices can be generated automatically for all customers using cron and invoice generator script.

Also invoice generation script is responsible for the sending generated invoices to the customers.

Script is located at: /usr/share/ngcp-panel/tools/generate_invoices.pl

In short:

• To generate and immediately send invoices for the previous month:

perl /usr/share/ngcp-panel/tools/generate_invoice.pl --send --prevmonth

• To generate invoices for the previous month without sending:

```
perl /usr/share/ngcp-panel-tools/generate_invoice.pl --prevmonth
```

· To send already generated invoices for the previous month:

perl /usr/share/ngcp-panel/tools/generate_invoice.pl --sendonly --prevmonth

· Regenerate invoices for the specified period:

```
perl /usr/share/ngcp-panel/tools/generate_invoice.pl --stime="2015-01-01 00:00:00" ↔
    --etime="2015-01-31 00:00:00" --regenerate
```

Some not obvious options:

- *--allow_terminated* Generates invoices for the terminated contracts too.
- *--force_unrated* Generate invoices despite unrated calls existence in the specified generation period.
- *--no_empty* Skip invoices for the contracts without calls in the specified period and with null permanent fee for the billing profile.

To see all possible script options use --help or --man:

/usr/share/ngcp-panel/tools/generate_invoices.pl --man

Script will be run periodically as configured by the cron files. Cron files templates can be found at:

- /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/cron.d/ngcp-invoice-gen.tt2
- · /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/cron.d/ngcp-invoice-gen.services

After applying your configuration cron file will be located at:

· /etc/cron.d/ngcp-invoice-gen

Script uses configuration file located at: /etc/ngcp-invoice-gen/invoice-gen.conf

Except common DB connection configuration following specific options can be defined in the config file:

• **RESELLER_ID** *1,2,3,...N*

Comma separated resellers id. Invoice generation will be performed only for the specified resellers.

• CLIENT_CONTRACT_ID 1,2,3,...N

Comma separated customers id. Invoice generation will be performed only for the specified customers.

• STIME YYYY-mm-DD HH:MM:SS

Usually is not necessary. Script option --prevmonth will define correct start and end time for the previous month billing period. Generated invoices will include all calls with call start time more then STIME value and less the ETIME value.

• ETIME YYYY-mm-DD HH:MM:SS

Usually is not necessary. Script option --prevmonth will define correct start and end time for the previous month billing period. Generated invoices will include all calls with call start time more then STIME value and less the ETIME value.

• SEND [0/1]

Generated invoices will be immediately sent to the customers.

• RESEND [0/1]

Invoices, already sent to the customers, will be sent again.

• REGENERATE [0/1]

Already presented invoices files will be generated again. Otherwise they will stay intouched.

• ALLOW_TERMINATED [0/1]

Generate invoices for the already terminated customers too.

ADMIN_EMAIL your@email.com

Purposed for notifications about invoices generation fails. Not in use now.

All generated invoices can be seen in the invoice management interface Section 9.1.

On request each invoice will be sent to the proper customer as e-mail with the invoice PDF in the attachment. Letter content is defined by the invoice email template.

10 Email templates

10.1 Email events

The sip:provider PRO allows to customize content of the emails sent on the following actions:

- Web password reset requested. Email will be sent to the subscriber, whom password was requested for resetting. If the subscriber doesn't have own email, letter will be sent to the customer, who owns the subscriber.
- New subscriber created. Email will be sent to the newly created subscriber or to the customer, who owns new subscriber.
- Letter with the invoice. Letter will be sent to the customer.

10.2 Initial template values and template variables

Default email templates for each of the email events are inserted on the initial sip:provider PRO database creation. Content of the default template is described in the appropriate sections. Default email templates aren't linked to any reseller and can't be changed through sip:provider PRO Panel. They will be used to initialize default templates for the newly created reseller.

Each email template refers to the values from the database using special mark-ups "[%" and "%]". Each email template has fixed set of the variables. Variables can't be added or changed without changes in the sip:provider PRO Panel code.

10.3 Password reset email template

Email will be sent after subscriber or subscriber administrator requested password reset for the subscriber account. Letter will be sent to the subscriber. If subscriber doesn't have own email, letter will be sent to the customer owning the subscriber.

Template name	passreset_default_email
From	default@sipwise.com
Subject	Password reset email
Body	
	Dear Customer,
	Please go to [%url%] to set your password and log into your self-care ↔ interface.
	Your faithful Sipwise system
	 This is an automatically generated message. Do not reply.

Default content of the password reset email template is:

Following variables will be provided to the email template:

- [%url%]: specially generated url where subscriber can define his new password.
- [%subscriber%]: username@domain of the subscriber, which password was requested for reset.

10.4 New subscriber notification email template

Email will be sent on the new subscriber creation. Letter will be sent to the newly created subscriber if it has an email. Otherwise, letter will be sent to the customer who owns the subscriber.

Note

By default email content template is addressed to the customer. Please consider this when create the subscriber with an email.

Template name	subscriber_default_email
From	default@sipwise.com
Subject	Subscriber created
Body	
	Dear Customer,
	A new subscriber [%subscriber%] has been created for you.
	Your faithful Sipwise system
	 This is an automatically generated message. Do not reply.

Following variables will be provided to the email template:

- [%url%]: specially generated url where subscriber can define his new password.
- [%subscriber%]: username@domain of the subscriber, which password was requested for reset.

10.5 Invoice email template

Template name	invoice_default_email
From	default@sipwise.com
Subject	Invoice #[%invoice.serial%] from [%invoice.period_start_obj.ymd%] to
	[%invoice.period_end_obj.ymd%]

Body		
	Dear Customer,	
	Please find your invoice #[%invoice.serial%] for [%invoice. ↔ period_start_obj.month_name%], [%invoice.period_start_obj.year%] in attac letter.	hment
	Your faithful Sipwise system	
	 This is an automatically generated message. Do not reply.	

Variables passed to the email template:

• [%invoice%]: container variable for the invoice information.

Invoice fields

- [%invoice.serial%]
- [%invoice.amount_net%]
- [%invoice.amount_vat%]
- [%invoice.amount_total%]
- [%invoice.period_start_obj%]
- [%invoice.period_end_obj%]

The fields [%invoice.period_start_obj%] and [%invoice.period_end_obj%] provide methods of the perl package DateTime for the invoice start date and end date. Further information about DateTime can be obtained from the package documentation: man DateTime

- [%provider%]: container variable for the reseller contact. All database contact values will be available.
- [%client%]: container variable for the customer contact.

Contact fields example for the "provider". Replace "provider" to client to access proper "customer" contact fields.

- [%provider.gender%]
- [%provider.firstname%]
- [%provider.lastname%]
- [%provider.comregnum%]
- [%provider.company%]
- [%provider.street%]
- [%provider.postcode%]
- [%provider.city%]
- [%provider.country%]
- [%provider.phonenumber%]
- [%provider.mobilenumber%]
- [%provider.email%]
- [%provider.newsletter%]
- [%provider.faxnumber%]
- [%provider.iban%]
- [%provider.bic%]
- [%provider.vatnum%]
- [%provider.bankname%]
- [%provider.gpp0 provider.gpp9%]

10.6 Email templates management

Email templates linked to the resellers can be customized in the email templates management interface. For the administrative account email templates of all the resellers will be shown. Respectively for the reseller account only owned email templates will be shown.

					Logged in as administrator	
sip:wise N	GCP Dashboard			*		▼ ₩ Settings ▼
Email T	emplates					
← Back	🖈 Create Email Template					
Show 5	✓ entries				Search:	
#	* Reseller	Name	From	Subject		
10	New Reseller	subscriber_default_email	default@sipwise.com	Subscriber crea	ated	🕑 Edit 🍵 Delete
11	New Reseller	passreset_default_email	default@sipwise.com	Password rese	t email	
12	New Reseller	invoice_default_email	default@sipwise.com	[%invoice.perio	oice.serial%] from od_start_obj.ymd%] to od_end_obj.ymd%]	
Showing 1 to 3	of 3 entries				(← 1 → ⇒

To create create new email template press button "Create Email Template".

	IGCP Dashbo	ard			A .nl M	Ionitoring & Statistics 👻	
Email T	emplate	Create Email Template				×	
		Reseller		Search:	New Reseller	^	
		#	Name	Contract #	Status		
← Back	🖈 Create	21	New Reseller	184	active	•	
Show 5		Showing	1 to 1 of 1 entries (filtered from !	total entries)	⇔ ← 1	-	
#	* Reseller				Create	Reseller	
10	New Reselle	Name					
11	New Reselle	From Email Address					
12	New Reselle	Subject					
		Body Template Dear C	Customer,				
Showing 1 to 3	of 3 entries	A new	subscriber 1% subscriber %1 h	as been created for vo	011	↓ L= L	
						Save	

On the email template form all fields are mandatory:

- Reseller: reseller who owns this email template.
- Name: currently only email template with the following names will be considered by the sip:provider PRO on the appropriate event Section 10.1 :
 - passreset_default_email;
 - subscriber_default_email;

- invoice_default_email;
- From Email Address: email address which will be used in the From field in the letter sent by the sip:provider PRO.
- Subject: Template of the email subject. Subject will be processed with the same template variables as the email body.
- Body: Email text template. Will be processed with appropriate template variables.

11 Provisioning interfaces

The sip:provider PRO provides two kinds of provisioning interfaces for easy interconnection with 3rd party tools. The one recommended by Sipwise is the REST API, and the other (soon deprecated) one is SOAP and XMLRPC. Any new functionality is only added to the REST interface, so do not base any new development on SOAP or XMLRPC.

11.1 REST API

The sip:provider PRO provides a REST API to provision various functionality of the platform. The entry point - and at the same time the official documentation - is at https://<your-ip>:1443/api. It allows both administrators and resellers (in a limited scope) to manage the system.

You can either authenticate via username and password of your administrative account you're using to access the admin panel, or via SSL client certificates. Find out more about client certificate authentication in the online api documentation.

11.2 SOAP and XMLRPC API

Important

SOAP and XMLRPC API are deprecated and disabled by default since mr3.6.1. Please consider using REST API as SOAP and XMLRPC API will be deleted in upcoming release(s). To enable SOAP and XMLRPC change /*etc/ngcp-config/config.yml* by setting *ossbss* \rightarrow *frontend* \rightarrow *fcgi* and execute *ngcpcfg apply*.

The sip:provider PRO provides two (soon deprecated) XML based provisioning interfaces - SOAP and XMLRPC. The server provides online documentation about all the functions available. To access the online documentation for the first time, you need to follow the following instructions:

· Generate a password for http access to the provisioning interfaces:

htpasswd -nbs myuser mypassword

Note

Also see man 1 htpasswd on how to generate crypt or MD5 passwords if you like. Of course you may use any other process to generate crypt, MD5 or SHA hashed passwords. But using htpasswd ensures the hashes are also understood by Nginx. To install htpasswd please run apt-get install apache2-utils on your system.

- Access https://<ip>:2443/SOAP/Provisioning.wsdl and login with your new credentials.

Note

The default port for provisioning interfaces is 2443. You can change it in /etc/ngcp-config/config.yml by modifying $oss-bss \rightarrow apache \rightarrow port$ and execute ngcpcfg apply.



Important

The displayed online API documentation shows all the currently available functionalities. Enabling or disabling features in */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml* will directly reflect in the functions being available via the APIs.



Important

If your SOAP client throws errors because of the inline <documentation> tags (e.g. Visual Studio and the stock PHP SOAP client complain about this), try to use the WSDL URL https://<ip>:2443/SOAP/Provisioning.wsdl?plain instead, which supresses the output of these tags.

12 Configuration Framework

The sip:provider PRO provides a configuration framework for consistent and easy to use low level settings management. A basic usage of the configuration framework only needs two actions already used in previous chapters:

- Edit /etc/ngcp-config/config.yml file.
- Execute ngcpcfg apply command.

Low level management of the configuration framework might be required by advanced users though. This chapter explains the architecture and usage of the NGCP configuration framework. If the basic usage explained above fits your needs, feel free to skip this chapter and return to it when your requirements change.

A more detailed workflow of the configuration framework for creating a configuration file consists of 6 steps:

- · Generation or editing of configuration templates and/or configuration values.
- Generation of the configuration files based on configuration templates and configuration values defined in config.yml, constants.yml and network.yml files.
- Execution of prebuild commands if defined for a particular configuration file or configuration directory.
- Placement of the generated configuration file in the target directory. This step is called *build* in the configuration framework.
- Execution of *postbuild* commands if defined for that configuration file or configuration directory.
- Execution of *services* commands if defined for that configuration file or configuration directory. This step is called *services* in the configuration framework.
- Saving of the generated changes. This step is called *commit* in the configuration framework.

12.1 Configuration templates

The sip:provider PRO provides configuration file templates for most of the services it runs. These templates are stored in the directory */etc/ngcp-config/templates*.

Example: Template files for /etc/ngcp-sems/sems.conf are stored in /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/ngcp-sems/.

There are different types of files in this template framework, which are described below.

12.1.1 .tt2 and .customtt.tt2 files

These files are the main template files that will be used to generate the final configuration file for the running service. They contain all the configuration options needed for a running sip:provider PRO system. The configuration framework will combine these files with the values provided by *config.yml*, *constants.yml* and *network.yml* to generate the appropriate configuration file.

Example: In the installation chapter we've changed the public interface from *lo* to *eth0*. This parameter will for example change kamailio's listen address, when the configuration file is generated. A quick look to the template file under /*etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/kama* will show a line like this: listen=udp:[% ip %]:[% kamailio.lb.port %]

After applying the changes with the *ngcpcfg apply* command, a new configuration file will be created under /*etc/kamailio/ka-mailio.cfg* with the proper values taken from the main configuration files (in this case *network.yml*):

listen=udp:1.2.3.4:5060

All the low-level configuration is provided by these .tt2 template files and the corresponding config.yml file. Anyways, advanced users might require a more particular configuration.

Instead of editing .tt2 files, the configuration framework recognises .customtt.tt2 files. These files are the same as .tt2, but they have higher priority when the configuration framework creates the final configuration files. An advanced user should create a .customtt.tt2 file from a copy of the corresponding .tt2 template and leave the .tt2 template untouched. This way, the user will have his personalized configuration and the system will continue providing a working, updated configuration template in .tt2 format.

Example: We'll create /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/kamailio.cfg.customtt.tt2 and use it for our personalized configuration. In this example, we'll just append a comment at the end of the template.

```
cd /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/kamailio/lb
cp kamailio.cfg.tt2 kamailio.cfg.customtt.tt2
echo '# This is my last line comment' >> kamailio.cfg.customtt.tt2
ngcpcfg apply
```

The ngcpcfg command will generate /etc/kamailio/kamailio.cfg from our custom template instead of the general one.

tail -1 /etc/kamailio/kamailio.cfg
This is my last line comment

Tip

The tt2 files use the Template Toolkit language. Therefore you can use all the feature this excellent toolkit provides within ngcpcfg's template files (all the ones with the .tt2 suffix).

12.1.2 .prebuild and .postbuild files

After creating the configuration files, the configuration framework can execute some commands before and after placing that file in its target directory. These commands usually are used for changing the file's owner, groups, or any other attributes. There are some rules these commands need to match:

- They have to be placed in a .prebuild or .postbuild file in the same path as the original .tt2 file.
- The file name must be the same as the configuration file, but having the mentioned suffixes.
- The commands must be *bash* compatible.
- · The commands must return 0 if successful.

· The target configuration file is matched by the environment variable output_file.

Example: We need *www-data* as owner of the configuration file */etc/ngcp-ossbss/provisioning.conf*. The configuration framework will by default create the configuration files with root:root as owner:group and with the same permissions (rwx) as the original template. For this particular example, we will change the owner of the generated file using the *.postbuild* mechanism.

12.1.3 .services files

.services files are pretty similar and might contain commands that will be executed after the build process. There are two types of .services files:

- The particular one, with the same name as the configuration file it is associated to. Example: /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/asterisk/sip.conf.services is associated to /etc/asterisk/sip.conf
- The general one, named ngcpcfg.services wich is associated to every file in its target directory.
 Example: /etc/ngcp-config/templates/etc/asterisk/ngcpcfg.services is associated to every file under /etc/asterisk/

When the *services* step is triggered all *.services* files associated to a changed configuration file will be executed. In case of the general file, any change to any of the configuration files in the directory will trigger the execution of the commands.

Tip

If the service script has the execute flags set (*chmod +x \$file*) it will be invoked directly. If it doesn't have execute flags set it will be invoked under bash. Make sure the script is bash compatible if you do not set execute permissions on the service file.

These commands are usually service reload/restarts to ensure the new configuration has been loaded by running services.

Note

The configuration files mentioned in the following example usually already exist on the platform. Please make sure you don't overwrite any existing files if following this example.

Example:

In this example we created two .services files. Now, each time we trigger a change to /etc/mysql.my.cnf or to /etc/asterisk/* we'll see that MySQL or Asterisk services will be restarted by the ngcpcfg system.

12.2 config.yml, constants.yml and network.yml files

The /etc/ngcp-config/config.yml file contains all the user-configurable options, using the YAML (YAML Ain't Markup Language) syntax.

The /*etc/ngcp-config/constants.yml* file provides configuration options for the platform that aren't supposed to be edited by the user. Do not manually edit this file unless you really know what you're doing.

The */etc/ngcp-config/network.yml* file provides configuration options for all interfaces and IP addresses on those interfaces. You can use the *ngcp-network* tool for conveniently change settings without having to manually edit this file.

The /etc/ngcp-config/ngcpcfg.cfg file is the main configuration file for ngcpcfg itself. Do not manually edit this file unless you really know what you're doing.

12.3 ngcpcfg and its command line options

The ngcpcfg utility supports the following command line options:

12.3.1 apply

The *apply* option is a short-cut for the options "build && services && commit" and also executes *etckeeper* to record any modified files inside /etc. It is the recommended option to use the ngcpcfg framework unless you want to execute any specific commands as documented below.

12.3.2 build

The *build* option generates (and therefore also updates) configuration files based on their configuration (config.yml) and template files (.tt2). Before the configuration file is generated a present .prebuild will be executed, after generation of the configuration file the according .postbuild script (if present) will be executed. If a *file* or *directory* is specified as argument the build will generate only the specified configuration file/directory instead of running through all present templates.

Example: to generate only the file /etc/nginx/sites-available/ngcp-panel you can execute:

ngcpcfg build /etc/nginx/sites-available/ngcp-panel

Example: to generate all the files located inside the directory /etc/nginx/ you can execute:

ngcpcfg build /etc/nginx/

12.3.3 commit

The *commit* option records any changes done to the configuration tree inside */etc/ngcp-config*. The commit option should be executed when you've modified anything inside the configuration tree.

12.3.4 decrypt

Decrypt /etc/ngcp-config-crypted.tgz.gpg and restore configuration files, doing the reverse operation of the *encrypt* option. Note: This feature is only available if the ngcp-ngcpcfg-locker package is installed.

12.3.5 diff

Show uncommitted changes between ngcpcfg's Git repository and the working tree inside /etc/ngcp-config. Iff the tool doesn't report anything it means that there are no uncommitted changes. If the --addremove option is specified then new and removed files (iff present) that are not yet (un)registered to the repository will be reported, no further diff actions will be executed then. Note: This option is available since ngcp-ngcpcfg version 0.11.0.

12.3.6 encrypt

Encrypt /etc/ngcp-config and all resulting configuration files with a user defined password and save the result as /etc/ngcp-configcrypted.tgz.gpg. Note: This feature is only available if the ngcp-ngcpcfg-locker package is installed.

12.3.7 help

The help options displays ngcpcfg's help screen and then exits without any further actions.

12.3.8 initialise

The *initialise* option sets up the ngcpcfg framework. This option is automatically executed by the installer for you, so you shouldn't have to use this option in normal operations mode.

12.3.9 pull

Retrieve modifications from shared storage. Note: This option is available in the High Availability setup only.

12.3.10 push

Push modifications to shared storage and remote systems. After changes have been pushed to the nodes the *build* option will be executed on each remote system to rebuild the configuration files (unless the --nobuild has been specified, then the build step will be skipped). If hostname(s) or IP address(es) is given as argument then the changes will be pushed to the shared storage and to the given hosts only. If no host has been specified then the hosts specified in */etc/ngcp-config/systems.cfg* are used. Note: This option is available in the High Availability setup only.

12.3.11 services

The services option executes the service handlers for any modified configuration file(s)/directory.

12.3.12 status

The *status* option provides a human readable interface to check the state of the configuration tree. If you are unsure what should be done as next step or if want to check the current state of the configuration tree just invoke *ngcpcfg status*.

If everything is OK and nothing needs to be done the output should look like:

```
# ngcpcfg status
Checking state of ngcpcfg:
OK: has been initialised already (without shared storage)
Checking state of configuration files:
OK: nothing to commit.
Checking state of /etc files
OK: nothing to commit.
```

If the output doesn't say "OK" just follow the instructions provided by the output of ngcpcfg status.

Further details regarding the ngcpcfg tool are available through man ngcpcfg on the Sipwise Next Generation Platform.

13 Network Configuration

Starting with version 2.7, the sip:provider PRO uses a dedicated *network.yml* file to configure the IP addresses of the system. The reason for this is to be able to access all IPs of all nodes for all services from any particular node in case of a distributed system on one hand, and in order to be able the generate */etc/network/interfaces* automatically for all nodes based on this central configuration file.

13.1 General Structure

The basic structure of the file looks like this:

```
hosts:
  self:
    role:
      - proxy
      - lb
      - mgmt
    interfaces:
      - eth0
      - 10
    eth0:
      ip: 192.168.51.213
      netmask: 255.255.255.0
      type:
        - sip_ext
        - rtp_ext
        - web_ext
        - web_int
    lo:
      ip: 127.0.0.1
      netmask: 255.255.255.0
      type:
        - sip_int
        - ha_int
```

In PRO and Carrier deployments, all hosts of the system are defined, and the names are the actual host names instead of *self*, like this:

```
hosts:
sp1:
    peer: sp2
    role: ...
    interfaces: ...
sp2:
    peer: sp1
```

role: ... interfaces: ...

13.2 Available Host Options

There are three different main sections for a host in the config file, which are role, interfaces and the actual interface definitions.

In PRO deployments, there is also a *peer* setting pointing to the second node of the pair.

- role: The role setting is an array defining which logical roles a node will act as. Possible entries for this setting are:
 - mgmt: This entry means the host is acting as management node for the platform. In a sip:provider PRO, this option must always been set. The management node exposes the admin and csc panels to the users and the APIs to external applications and is used to export CDRs.
 - Ib: This entry means the host is acting as SIP load-balancer for the platform. In a sip:provider PRO, this option must always been set. The SIP load-balancer acts as an ingress and egress point for all SIP traffic to and from the platform.
 - proxy: This entry means the host is acting as SIP proxy for the platform. In a sip:provider PRO, this option must always been set. The SIP proxy acts as registrar, proxy and application server and media relay, and is responsible for providing the features for all subscribers provisioned on it.
- peer: The peer setting points to the second node of the pair within the overall system. For example in sp1 the peer will always
 contain sp2 and vice versa in order for each node to know its companion node for providing high availability, data replication etc.
- interfaces: The interfaces setting is an array defining all interface names in the system. The actual interface details are set in the actual interface settings below.
- <interface name>: After the interfaces are defined in the interfaces setting, each of those interfaces needs to be specified as a separate setting with the following options:
 - ip
 - netmask
 - shared_ip
 - shared_v6ip
 - advertised_ip
 - type

There are different *interface types*, which define the services on a particular *interface*. For example the type *ssh_ext* set for a specific interface defines that the SSH daemon will listen on that interface for incoming connections. The list of possible types is as follows (note that you can assign a type only once per node):

- ha_int: interface for HA communications between nodes sp1 and sp2 (for heartbeat checks, DB replication etc.)
- mon_ext: interface for monitoring purposes, e.g. for snmpd
- *rtp_ext*: interface for external RTP relay

- sip_ext: interface for external SIP communication between the sip:provider PRO and the end points
- sip_ext_incoming: extra listen interface for external SIP traffic (optional)
- sip_int: interface for internal SIP communication, e.g. between load-balancer, proxy and application servers
- ssh_ext: interface for SSH remote login
- web_ext: interface for the subscriber web panel and the subscriber's SOAP/REST APIs
- · web_int: interface for the administrator web panel, his SOAP/REST APIs and internal API communication
- aux_ext: interface for potentially insecure external components like rsyslogd service; e.g. the CloudPBX module can use those services to provide time services and remote logging facilities to end customer devices. The type aux_ext is assigned to *lo* interface by default. If it is needed to expose this type to the public, it is recommended to assign the type aux_ext to a separate VLAN interface to be able to limit or even block the incoming traffic easily via firewalling in case of emergency, like a (D)DOS attack on rsyslog services.

14 Advanced Network Configuration

You have a typical deployment now and you are good to go, however you may need to do extra configuration depending on the devices you are using and functionality you want to achieve.

14.1 Extra SIP Sockets

By default, the load-balancer listens on the UDP and TCP ports 5060 (*kamailio* \rightarrow *lb* \rightarrow *port*) and TLS port 5061 (*kamailio* \rightarrow *lb* \rightarrow *tls* \rightarrow *port*). If you need to setup one or more extra SIP listening ports or IP addresses in addition to those standard ports, please edit the *kamailio* \rightarrow *lb* \rightarrow *extra_sockets* option in your */etc/ngcp-config/config.yml* file.

The correct format consists of a label and value like this:

```
extra_sockets:
    port_5064: udp:10.15.20.108:5064
    test: udp:10.15.20.108:6060
```

The label is shown in the outbound_socket peer preference (if you want to route calls to the specific peer out via specific socket); the value must contain a transport specification as in example above (udp, tcp or tls). After adding execute ngcpcfg apply:

```
ngcpcfg apply 'added extra socket' && ngcpcfg push
```

The direction of communication through this SIP extra socket is incoming+outgoing. The sip:provider PRO will answer the incoming client registrations and other methods sent to the extra socket. For such incoming communication no configuration is needed. For the outgoing communication the new socket must be selected in the outbound_socket peer preference. For more details read until the end of next chapter Section 14.2 that covers peer configuration for SIP and RTP in greater detail.

Important

In this section you have just added an extra SIP socket. RTP traffic will still use your rtp_ext IP address.

14.2 Extra SIP and RTP Sockets

If you want to use an additional interface (with a different IP address) for SIP signalling and RTP traffic you need to add your new interface in the */etc/network/interfaces* file. Also the interface must be declared in */etc/ngcp-config/network.yml*.

Suppose we need to add a new SIP socket and a new RTP socket on VLAN 100. You can use the *ngcp-network* tool for adding interfaces without having to manually edit this file:

```
ngcp-network --set-interface=eth0.100 --host=sp1 --ip=auto --netmask=auto --type= ↔
sip_ext_incoming --type=rtp_int_100
ngcp-network --set-interface=eth0.100 --host=sp2 --ip=auto --netmask=auto --type= ↔
sip_ext_incoming --type=rtp_int_100
```

The generated file should look like the following:

```
sp1:
••
. .
    eth0.100:
      hwaddr: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
      ip: 192.168.1.2
      netmask: 255.255.255.0
      shared_ip:
        - 192.168.1.3
      shared_v6ip: ~
      type:
        - sip_ext_incoming
        - rtp_int_100
. .
. .
    interfaces:
      - 10
      - eth0
      - eth0.100
      - eth1
. .
. .
sp2:
. .
. .
    eth0.100:
      hwaddr: ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

As you can see from the above example, extra SIP interfaces must have type *sip_ext_incoming*. While *sip_ext* should be listed only once per host, there can be multiple *sip_ext_incoming* interfaces. The direction of communication through this SIP interface is incoming only. The sip:provider PRO will answer the incoming client registrations and other methods sent to this address and remember the interfaces used for clients' registrations to be able to send incoming calls to him from the same interface.

In order to use the interface for the outbound SIP communication it is necessary to add it to extra_sockets section in /etc/ngcpconfig/config.yml and select in the outbound_socket peer preference. So if using the above example we want to use the vlan100 IP as source interface towards a peer, the corresponding section may look like the following:

```
extra_sockets:
    port_5064: udp:10.15.20.108:5064
    test: udp:10.15.20.108:6060
    int_100: udp:192.168.1.3:5060
```

The changes have to be applied:

ngcpcfg apply 'added extra SIP and RTP socket' && ngcpcfg push

After applying the changes, a new SIP socket will listen on IP 192.168.1.3 and this socket can now be used as source socket to send SIP messages to your peer for example. In above example we used label *int_100*. So the new label "int_100" is now shown in the outbound_socket peer preference.

Also, RTP socket is now listening on 192.168.1.3 and you can choose the new RTP socket to use by setting parameter rtp_interface to the Label "int_100" in your Domain/Subscriber/Peer preferences.

15 Security and Maintenance

Once the sip:provider PRO is in production, security and maintenance becomes really important. In this chapter, we'll go through a set of best practices for any production system.

15.1 Sipwise SSH access to sip:provider PRO

The sip:provider PRO provides SSH access to the system for Sipwise operational team for debugging and final tuning. Operational team uses user *sipwise* which can be logged in through SSH key only (password access is disabled) from dedicated access server *jump.sipwise.com* only.

To completely remove Sipwise access to your system, please execute as user root:

```
root@myserver:~# ngcp-support-access --disable && apt-get install ngcp-support-noaccess
```

Note

you have to execute the command above on each node of your sip:provider PRO system!



Warning

Warning

please ensure that the script complete successfully:

* Support access successfully disabled.

If you need to restore Sipwise access to the system, please execute as user root:

root@myserver:~# apt-get install ngcp-support-access && ngcp-support-access --enable



please ensure that the script complete successfully:

* Support access successfully enabled.

15.2 Firewalling

The sip:provider PRO runs a wide range of services. Some of them need to interact with the user, while some others need to interact with the administrator or with nobody at all. Assuming that we trust the sip:provider PRO server for outgoing connections, we'll focus only on incoming traffic to define the services that need to be open for interaction.

Service	Default port	Config option
Customer self care interface	443 TCP	www_admin->http_csc->port
SIP	5060 UDP,	kamailio->lb->port
	TCP	
SIP over TLS	5061 TCP	kamailio \rightarrow Ib \rightarrow tIs \rightarrow port + kamailio \rightarrow Ib \rightarrow tIs \rightarrow enable (Disabled by
		default)
RTP	30000-40000	rtpproxy->minport + rtpproxy->maxport
	UDP	
XCAP	1080 TCP	kamailio \rightarrow proxy \rightarrow presence \rightarrow enable + nginx \rightarrow xcap_port (Disabled by
		default)
XMPP	5222 and	None, standard XMPP ports for clients (5222) and federation (5269)
	5269 TCP	

Table 7: Subscribers

Table 8: Administrators

Service	Default port	Config option
SSH/SFTP	22 TCP	NA
Administrator interface	1443 TCP	www_admin->http_admin->port
Provisioning interfaces	2443 TCP	ossbss->apache->port

Caution

To function correctly, the *rtpengine* requires an additional *iptables* rule installed. This rule (with a target of RTPENGINE) is automatically installed and removed when the rtpengine starts and stops, so normally you don't need to worry about it. However, any 3rd party firewall solution can potentially flush out all existing iptables rules before installing its own, which would leave the system without the required RTPENGINE rule and this would lead to decreased performance. It is imperative that any 3rd party firewall solution either leaves this rule untouched, or installs it back into place after flushing all rules out. The complete parameters to install this rule (which needs to go into the INPUT chain of the filter table) are: -p udp -j RTPENGINE --id 0

15.3 Password management

The sip:provider PRO comes with some default passwords the user should change during the deployment of the system. They have been explained in the previous chapters of this document.

• The login for the system account *cdrexport* is disabled by default. Although this is a jailed account, it has access to sensitive information, namely the Call Detail Records of all calls. SSH keys should be used to login this user, or alternatively a really

strong password should be used when setting the password via passwd cdrexport.

- The root user in MySQL has no default password. A password should be set using the mysqladmin password command.
- The administrative web interface has a default user *administrator* with password *administrator*. It should be changed within this interface.
- Generate new password for user ngcpsoap to access the provisioning interfaces, see the details in Section 11.

Important

Many NGCP services use MySQL backend. Users and passwords for these services are created during the installation. These passwords are unique for each installation, and the connections are restricted to localhost. You should not change these users and passwords.

15.4 SSL certificates.

The sip:provider PRO provides default, self-signed SSL certificates for SSL connections. These certificates are common for every installation. Before going to production state, the system administrator should provide SSL certificates for the web services. These certificates can either be shared by all web interfaces (*provisioning*, *administrator interface* and *customer self care interface*), or separate ones for each them can be used.

- Generate the certificates. The *customer self care interface* certificate should be signed by a certification authority to avoid browser warnings.
- · Upload the certificates to the system
- Set the path to the new certificates in /etc/ngcp-config/config.yml:
 - ossbss-apache-autoprov-sslcertfile and ossbss-apache-autoprov-sslcertkeyfile for the provisioning interface.
 - $ossbss \rightarrow apache \rightarrow restapi \rightarrow sslcert file and <math>ossbss \rightarrow apache \rightarrow restapi \rightarrow sslcert key file for the REST interface.$
 - www_admin->http_admin->sslcertfile and www_admin->http_admin->sslcertkeyfile for the admin interface.
 - www_admin > http_csc > sslcertfile and www_csc > http_csc > sslcertkeyfile for the customer self care interface.
- Apply the configuration changes with *ngcpcfg apply*.

The sip:provider PRO also provides the self-signed SSL certificates for SIP over TLS services. The system administrator should replace them with certificates signed by a trusted certificate authority if he is going to enable it for the production usage (*ka-mailio* \rightarrow *lb* \rightarrow *tls* \rightarrow *enable* (disabled by default)).

- · Generate the certificates.
- · Upload the certificates to the system
- Set the path to the new certificates in /etc/ngcp-config/config.yml:
 - $kamailio \rightarrow lb \rightarrow tls \rightarrow sslcertfile$ and $kamailio \rightarrow lb \rightarrow tls \rightarrow sslcertkeyfile$.
- Apply the configuration changes with ngcpcfg apply.

15.5 sip:provider PRO Backup

For any service provider it is important to maintain a reliable backup policy as it enables prompt services restoration after any force majeure event. Although the design of sip:provider PRO implies data duplication and high availability of services, we still strongly suggest you to configure a backup procedure. The sip:provider PRO has a built-in solution that can help you back up the most crucial data. Alternatively, it can be integrated with any Debian compatible backup software.

15.5.1 What data to back up

· The database

This is the most important data in the system. All subscriber and billing information, CDRs, user preferences, etc. are stored in the MySQL server. It is strongly recommended to have up-to-date dumps of all the databases on corresponding NGCP nodes.

System configuration

The system configuration files such as /etc/mysql/sipwise.cnf and the /etc/ngcp-config/ directory should be included in the backup as well. We suggest backing up the whole /etc folder.

• Exported CDRs (optional)

The */home/jail/home/cdrexport* directory contains the exported CDRs. It depends on your call data retention policy whether or not to remove these files after exporting them to an external system.

15.5.2 The built-in backup solution

The sip:provider PRO comes with an easy-to-use solution that creates everyday backups of the most important data:

- The system configuration files. The whole /etc directory is backed up.
- · Exported CDRs. The /home/jail/home/cdrexport directory with csv files.
- All required databases on corresponding servers.

This functionality is disabled by default and can be enabled and configured in the *backuptools* subsection in the *config.yml* file. Please, refer to the NGCP configuration overview - backuptools Section C.1.2 section for the backup configuration options.

Once you set the required configuration options, apply the changes:

```
ngcpcfg apply 'enabled the backup feature'
ngcpcfg push
```

Once you activate the feature, the sip:provider PRO will create backups in the off-peak time on the standby nodes and put them to the */var/backup/ngcp_backup* directory. You can copy these files to your backup server using scp or ftp.

Note

make sure that you have enough free disk space to store the backups for the specified number of days.

15.6 Recovery

In the worst case scenario, when the system needs to be recovered from a total loss, you only need 4 steps to get the services back online:

- Install the sip:provider PRO as explained in chapter 2.
- Restore the /etc/ngcp-config/ directory and the /etc/mysql/sipwise.cnf file from the backup, overwriting your local files.
- · Restore the database from the latest MySQL dump.
- · Apply the changes to bring the original configuration into effect:

```
ngcpcfg apply 'restored the system from the backup' ngcpcfg push
```

15.7 Reset Database

Important

All existing data will be wiped out! Use this script only if you want to clear all previously configured services and start configuration from scratch.

To reset database to its original state you can execute a script: ngcp-reset-db. It will assign new unique passwords for the NGCP services and reset all services. The script will also create dumps for all NGCP databases.

15.8 Synchronize database

In case of unresolvable database replication issues or to copy mysql data between a pair of hosts (usually a pair of sp1 and sp2 nodes).

There is a script for that: ngcp-sync-db.

To synchronize databases you need to run the script on your target host.

- · Definitions:
 - master remote/master host (the database is dumped from there)
 - local target/local host (the database is imported onto)

Important

Your existing database on *local* will be completely wiped. The script provides a possibility to backup both *master* and *local* databases during the procedure.

You can run the script with -h or --help to check its options or use man ngcp-sync_db

If you run it without any options it automatically calculates *master* hostname (e.g. if you run it on *sp2* then *sp2==local* and sp1==master).

The script also requires mysql credentials and if none provided it uses username=*sipwise* and the password is picked from /etc/mysql/sipwise.cnf. You can specify user and/or password for both *master* and *local*.

Before the actual start it produces a summary with settings used to the procedure and a confirmation prompt to prevent accidental usage. Making use of --force option" however suppresses the confirmation prompt. By default no messages are printed on STDOUT (compliant to be integrated into another tools) and with -v or --verbose options you enable debugging where all the ongoing steps will be printed to STDOUT.

There are 2 modes available for synchronization, *online* and *backup*. By default *online* is used where the procedure does not create any backups and everything goes on the fly. That is useful for large databases where creating backups would require solid amounts of available free disk space. With the *backup* mode *master* db is dumped into a backup file on *local* first (default directory: */var/backup/ngcp-sync-db*) and imported upon the backup completion.

Mysql database connection to the *master* db and the *local* db is the essential part and by default the script tries to establish direct mysql connection however that may not be possible due to the access restrictions. To overcome that you can use --ssh-tunnel option and specifying there a local custom free port (e.g. --ssh-tunnel=33125) in this case an ssh tunnel will be created to *master* and used to establish the db connection on the *localhost* behalf (NOTE: Public key based ssh negotiation is required for the tunnel as the script does not suppot ssh credentials for security reasons).

Backups may be a subject to create during synchornization for possible rollbacks. To create the *local* db backup you should add – -local-backup. The *master* db backup is automatically created only using --sync-mode=backup. Upon completion all those created backups are deleted and if you need to keep them please use --keep-backups option (NOTE: In case of errors during synchronization and when backups are created they are NOT automatically deleted. Therefore, if the script had failed with an error and afterwards completed successully you may want to manually remove the remaining backups from */var/backup/ngcp-sync-db*).

· Examples:

Normal online mode synchronization $sp1 \rightarrow sp2$.

sp2> ngcp-sync-db

Normal backup mode synchronization $sp1 \rightarrow sp2$.

sp2> ngcp-sync-db --sync-mode=backup

Forced online mode synchronization sp1 \rightarrow sp2. USE WITH CARE as there will be no confirmation prompts.

```
sp2> ngcp-sync-db --force
```

Direct mysql db access is not possible. SSH tunnel is initialised to local port 33125 and forwards all connections 127.0.0.1:33125 \rightarrow sp1:3306.

sp2> ngcp-sync-db --ssh-tunnel=33125

Custom mysql credentials for the master db connection (by default: sipwise:/etc/mysql/sipwise.cnf)

sp2> ngcp-sync-db --master-user=frank --master-pass=dbconnect

Normal online mode synchronization $sp1 \rightarrow sp2$ with the *local* db backup and retaining the backup. (no *master* backup in this case as it is only available with -sync-mode=backup).

sp2> ngcp-sync-db --local-backup --keep-backups

Normal online mode synchronization *custom-node* \rightarrow *sp2* with ssh tunnel

sp2> ngcp-sync-db --master-host=custom-node --ssh-tunnel=45001

Forced syncrhonization *custom-node* \rightarrow *sp2* with ssh tunnel, backup sync mode, local backup, custom *master* and *local* db credentials and ports as well as a different backup dir

sp2> ngcp-sync-db --force --sync-mode=backup --master-host=custom-node --master-port=3308 ↔
 --ssh-tunnel=45001 --master-user=frank --master-pass=dbconnect --local-user=john --local ↔
 -pass=dblocal --local-backup --keep-backups --backup-dir=/home/barry/backups

15.9 System requirements and performance

The sip:provider PRO is a very flexible system, capable of serving from hundreds to several tens of thousands of subscribers in a single node. The system comes with a default configuration, capable of serving up to 50.000 subscribers in a *normal* environment. But there is no such thing as a *normal* environment. And the sip:provider PRO has sometimes to be tunned for special environments, special hardware requirements or just growing traffic.

Note

If you have performance issues with regards to disk I/O please consider enabling the *noatime* mount option for the root filesystem. Sipwise recommends the usage of *noatime*, though remove it if you use software which conflicts with its presence.

In this section some parameters will be explained to allow the sip:provider PRO administrator tune the system requirements for optimum performance.

Option	Default value	Requirement impact
cleanuptools→binlog_days	15	Heavy impact on the harddisk storage needed for mysql logs. It can help
		to restore the database from backups or restore broken replication.
database>bufferpoolsize	1/2 * Total	The installer will calculate the total system RAM and dedicate 50% to the
	system RAM	mysql innodb buffer. This value won't be changed in case the system
		RAM changes so it's up to the administrator to adjust it. For test systems
		or low RAM systems, lowering this setting is one of the most effective
		ways of releasing RAM. The administrator can check the innodb buffer hit
		rate on production systems; a hit rate over 99% is desired to avoid
		bottlenecks.
kamailio→lb→pkg_mem	16	This setting affects the amount of RAM the system will use. Each
		kamailio-lb worker will have this amount of RAM reserved. Lowering this
		setting up to 8 will help to release some memory depending on the
		number of kamailio-lb workers running. This can be a dangerous setting
		as the lb process could run out of memory. Use with caution.
kamailio→lb→shm_mem	1/16 * Total	The installer will set this value to 1/16 of the total system RAM. This
	System RAM	setting does not change even if the system RAM does so it's up to the
		administrator to tune it. It has been calculated that 1024 (1GB) is a good
		value for 50K subscriber environment. For a test environment, setting the
		value to 64 should be enough. "Out of memory" messages in the
		kamailio log can indicate that this value needs to be raised.
kamailio→lb→tcp_children	8	Number of TCP workers kamailio-lb will spawn per listening socket. The
		value should be fine for a mixed UDP-TCP 50K subscriber system.
		Lowering this setting can free some RAM as the number of kamailio
		processess would decrease. For a test system or a pure UDP subscriber
		system 2 is a good value. 1 or 2 TCP workers are always needed.
kamailio→lb→tls→enable	yes	Enable or not TLS signaling on the system. Setting this value to "no" will
		prevent kamailio to spawn TLS listening workers and free some RAM.
kamailio-lb-udp_children	8	See kamailio \rightarrow Ib \rightarrow tcp_children explanation
kamailio→proxy→children	8	See $kamailio \rightarrow lb \rightarrow tcp_children$ explanation. In this case the proxy only
		listens udp so these children should be enough to handle all the traffic. It
		could be set to 2 for test systems to lower the requirements.
kamailio→proxy→*_expires		Set the default and the max and min registration interval. The lower it is
		more REGISTER requests will be handled by the lb and the proxy. It can
		impact in the network traffic, RAM and CPU usage.
kamailio->proxy->natping_inte	rval 30	Interval for the proxy to send a NAT keepalive OPTIONS message to the
		nated subscriber. If decreased, this setting will increase the number of
		OPTIONS requests the proxy needs to send and can impact in the
		network traffic and the number of natping processes the system needs to
		run. See kamailio \rightarrow proxy \rightarrow natping_processes explanation.

Table 9: Requirement_options

Option	Default value	Requirement impact
kamailio->proxy->natping_pro	cesses 7	Kamailio-proxy will spawn this number of processes to send keepalive
		OPTIONS to the nated subscribers. Each worker can handle about 250
		messages/second (depends on the hardware). Depending the number of
		nated subscribers and the <i>kamailio</i> → <i>proxy</i> → <i>natping_interval</i> parameter
		the number of workers may need to be adjusted. The number can be
		calculated like
		nated_subscribers/natping_interval/pings_per_second_per_process. For
		the default options, asuming 50K nated subscribers in the system the
		parameter value would be $50.000/30/250 = (6,66)$ 7 workers. 7 is the
		maximum number of processes kamailio will accept. Raising this value
		will cause kamailio not to start.
kamailio->proxy->shm_mem	1/16 * Total	See $kamailio \rightarrow lb \rightarrow shm_mem$ explanation.
	System RAM	
rateomat→enable	yes	Set this to no if the system shouldn't perform rating on the CDRs. This
		will save CPU usage.
rsyslog→external_log	0	If enabled, the system will send the log messages to an external server.
		Depending on the <i>rsyslog</i> → <i>external_loglevel</i> parameter this can
		increase dramatically the network traffic.
rsyslog->ngcp_logs_preserve_	days 93	This setting will set the number of days ngcp logs under /var/log/ngcp will
		be kept in disk. Lowering this setting will free a high amount of disk
		space.

Table 9: (continued)

Тір

In case of using virtualized environment with limited amount of hardware resources, you can use the script *ngcp-toggle-performance-config* to adjust sip:provider PRO configuration for high/low performance:

```
root@spce:~# /usr/sbin/ngcp-toggle-performance-config
```

```
/usr/sbin/ngcp-toggle-performance-config - tool to adjust sip:provider configuration for ↔
    low/high performance
    --help Display this usage information
    --high-performance Adjust configuration for system with normal/high performance
```

```
--low-performance Adjust configuration for system with low performance (e.g. VMs)
```

root@spce:~#

15.10 Troubleshooting

The sip:provider PRO platform provides detailed logging and log files for each component included in the system via rsyslog. The main folder for log files is /var/log/ngcp/, it contains a list of self explanatory log files named by component name.

The sip:provider PRO is a high performance system which requires compromise between traceability (maximum amount of debug information being written to hard drive) and productivity (minimum load on IO subsystem). This is the reason why different log levels are configured for the provided components by default.

Most log files are designed for debugging sip:provider PRO by Sipwise operational team while main log files for daily routine usage are:

Log file	Content	Estimated size
/var/log/ngcp/api.log	API logs	medium
	providing type	
	and content of	
	API requests	
	and	
	responses as	
	well as	
	potential	
	errors	
/var/log/ngcp/panel.log	Admin Web UI	medium
	logs when	
	performing	
	operational	
	tasks on the	
	ngcp-panel	
/var/log/ngcp/cdr.log	mediation and	medium
	rating logs,	
	e.g. how	
	many CDRs	
	have been	
	generated	
	and potential	
	errors in case	
	of CDR	
	generation or	
	rating fails for	
	particular	
	accounting	
	data	

Content	Estimated size
fail-over	small
related logs in	
case a node	
in a pair loses	
connection to	
the other side,	
when a	
standby node	
takes over or	
an active	
node goes	
standby due	
to intra-node	
communica-	
tion issues or	
external ping	
node	
connection	
issues	
Overview of	huge
SIP requests	
and replies	
along with	
network	
source and	
destination	
information	
flowing	
through the	
platform	
	fail-over related logs in case a node in a pair loses connection to the other side, when a standby node takes over or an active node goes standby due to intra-node communica- tion issues or external ping node connection issues Overview of SIP requests and replies along with network source and destination information flowing through the



Warning

it is highly NOT recommended to change default log levels as it can cause system IO overloading which will affect call processing.

Note

the exact size of log files depend on system type, system load, system health status and system configuration, so cannot be estimated with high precision. Additionally operational network parameters like ASR and ALOC may impact the log files' size significantly.

16 Monitoring and Alerting

16.1 Internal Monitoring

The platform uses the *monit* daemon internally to monitor all essential services. Since the sip:provider PRO runs in an active/standby mode, not all services are always running on both nodes, some of them will only run on the active node and be stopped on the standby node. At any time, you can use the command monit summary to get a list of all services and their current status, or monit status for the same list with more detail.

Important

sip:provider PRO has a monit services dependencies since mr3.5.1. Services specified in a depend statement will be checked during stop/start/monitor/unmonitor operations. If a service is stopped or unmonitored it will stop/unmonitor any services that depends on itself. Which means that kamailio/sbc/asterisk/prosody/... will be stopped on monit stop mysql operation.

The *monit* daemon takes care of quickly restarting a service should it ever fail for whatever reason. When that happens, the deamon will send a notification email to the address specified in the config.yml file under the key general.adminmail. It will also send warning emails to this address under certain abnormal conditions, such as when the system is low on memory (> 75% used) or under high-load conditions.

Important

In order for *monit* to be able to send email to the specified address, the local MTA (*exim4*) must be configured correctly. If you haven't done so already, run dpkg-reconfigure exim4-config to do this. The CE edition's handbook contains more information about this in the *Installation* chapter.

16.2 Statistics Dashboard

The platform's administration interface (described in Section 5) provides a simple graphical overview of the most important system health data points, such as memory usage, load averages and disk usage, as well as statistics about the VoIP system itself, such as the number of concurrent active calls, number of provisioned and registered subscribers, etc.

16.3 External Monitoring Using SNMP

16.3.1 Overview and Initial Setup

The sip:provider PRO exports a variety of system health data and statistics over standard SNMP. By default, the SNMP interface can only be accessed locally. To make it possible to poll the SNMP data from an external system, the config.yml file needs to be edited and the list of allowed community names and allowed hosts/IP ranges must be populated. This list can be found under the checktools.snmpd.communities key and consists of one or more community/source value pairs. The community is the SNMP community string to be allowed, while source is the IP address or IP block to allow this community

from. A source of default equals the IP address 127.0.0.1. Other legal values are single IP addresses or IP blocks in IP/prefix notation, for example 192.168.115.0/24. It is recommended that you leave the default entry (public and default) in place for local testing of SNMP functionality.

Tip

To locally check if SNMP is working correctly, execute the command snmpwalk -v2c -cpublic localhost . (note the trailing dot), assuming the default SNMP community entry has been left in place. This will generate a long list of raw SNMP OIDs and their values.

Tip

SNMP version 1 and version 2c are supported.

16.3.2 Details

All basic system health variables (such as memory, disk, swap, CPU usage, network statistics, process lists, etc) can be found in standard OID slots from standard MIBs. For example, memory statistics can be found through the *UCD-SNMP-MIB* in OIDs such as memTotalSwap.0, memAvailSwap.0, memTotalReal.0, memAvailReal.0+, etc., which translate to numeric OIDs .1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.4.*.In fact, UCD-SNMP-MIB++ is the most useful MIB for overall system health checks.

Additionally, there's a list of specially monitored processes, also found through the UCD-SNMP-MIB. UCD-SNMP-MIB::prNa mes

(.1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.2.1.2) gives the list of monitored processes, prCount (.1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.2.1.5) is how many of each process are running and prErrorFlag (.1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.2.1.100) gives a 0/1 error indication (with prErrMessage (.1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.2.1.101) providing an explanation of any error).

Тір

Some of these processes are not supposed to be running on the standby node, so you'll see the error flag raised there. A possible solution is to run these SNMP checks against the shared service IP of the cluster. See in Section 2.2 below for more information. Furthermore, UCD-SNMP-MIB provides a list of custom, external checks. The names of these can be found under the

UCD-SNMP-MIB::extNames (.2) tree, with extOutput (.101) providing the output (one line) from each check and extResult (.100) the exit code from each check.

The first of these external checks called collective_check provides a combined and overall system health status indicator. It gathers information from both nodes and returns 0 in extResult.1(.100.1) if everything is OK and running as it should. If it finds a problem somewhere, but with the system still operational (e.g. a service is stopped on the inactive node), extResult. 1 will return 1 and extOutput.1 will be set to a string that can be used to diagnose the problem. In case the system is found in a critical and non-operational state, extResult.1 will return 2, again with an error message set. If you want to keep it really simple, you can just monitor this one OID and raise an alarm if it ever goes to non-zero.

Тір

The 0/1/2 status codes allow for easy integration with Nagios.

The remaining external checks simply return statistics about the system, they all return a number in extOutput and have extResult always set to zero.

The full list of such checks is below. All of these checks exist in three flavors: the first returns the statistics from sp1 (the first node in the sip:provider PRO pair), the second from sp2, and the third from whichever node is being queried (which is useful when querying the shared service IP). For example, the local SIP response time from sp1 is in sip_check_sp1, from sp2 is in sip_check_sp2 and from the host itself in sip_check_self.

The base OID of the Result and Output OID is always .1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.8.1, so if you read .100.1, the full OID is .1.3.6.1.4.1.2021.8.1.100.1.

Name in MIB	Result OID	Output OID	Name	Description
UCD-SNMP-	.100.1	.101.1	collective_check	Summarized platform
MIB::extNames.1				check
UCD-SNMP-	.100.2	.101.2	sip_check_sp1	SIP response time in
MIB::extNames.2				seconds on sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.3	.101.3	sip_check_sp2	SIP response time in
MIB::extNames.3				seconds on sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.4	.101.4	mysql_check_sp1	Average number of
MIB::extNames.4				MySQL queries per
				second on sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.5	.101.5	mysql_check_sp2	Average number of
MIB::extNames.5				MySQL queries per
				second on sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.6	.101.6	mysql_replication_chec	k_MgsQL replication
MIB::extNames.6				delay in seconds on
				sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.7	.101.7	mysql_replication_chec	k_Mg8QL replication
MIB::extNames.7				delay in seconds on
				sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.8	.101.8	mpt_check_sp1	RAID status on sp1
MIB::extNames.8				
UCD-SNMP-	.100.9	.101.9	mpt_check_sp2	RAID status on sp2
MIB::extNames.9				
UCD-SNMP-	.100.10	.101.10	exim_queue_check_sp	Number of mails
MIB::extNames.10				undelivered in MTA
				queue on sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.11	.101.11	exim_queue_check_sp2	2 Number of mails
MIB::extNames.11				undelivered in MTA
				queue on sp2

Name in MIB	Result OID	Output OID	Name	Description
UCD-SNMP-	.100.12	.101.12	provisioned_subse	cribers_Noberdbe_spfl
MIB::extNames.12				subscribers
				provisioned on sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.13	.101.13	provisioned_subse	cribers_Noberdbe_sp2
MIB::extNames.13				subscribers
				provisioned on sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.14	.101.14	kam_dialog_active	e_checklysprober of active
MIB::extNames.14				calls on sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.15	.101.15	kam_dialog_active	e_checklvsproductive
MIB::extNames.15				calls on sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.16	.101.16	kam_dialog_early	_check_Napmber of calls in
MIB::extNames.16				Early Media state on
				sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.17	.101.17	kam_dialog_early	_check_Napp2ber of calls in
MIB::extNames.17				Early Media state on
				sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.18	.101.18	kam_dialog_type_	local_checkbept active
MIB::extNames.18				calls local on sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.19	.101.19	kam_dialog_type_	local_checkbep@factive
MIB::extNames.19				calls local on sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.20	.101.20	kam_dialog_type_	_relay_d kleoko_spo f active
MIB::extNames.20				calls routed via peers
				on sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.21	.101.21	kam_dialog_type_	_relay_dNeoko_sp@factive
MIB::extNames.21				calls routed via peers
				on sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.22	.101.22	kam_dialog_type_	incominturabeckofsipcoming
MIB::extNames.22				calls on sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.23	.101.23	kam_dialog_type_	_incominturcheckofsp2oming
MIB::extNames.23				calls on sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.24	.101.24	kam_dialog_type_	_outgoinlogurtheeckotspoltgoing
MIB::extNames.24				calls on sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.25	.101.25	kam_dialog_type_	_outgoin to utgoin outgoing
MIB::extNames.25				calls on sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.26	.101.26	kam_usrloc_regus	sers_chelckmbeptiof
MIB::extNames.26				subscribers with at
				least one active
				registration on sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.27	.101.27	kam_usrloc_regus	
MIB::extNames.27				subscribers with at
				least one active
				registration on sp2

Name in MIB	Result OID	Output OID	Name	Description
UCD-SNMP-	.100.28	.101.28	kam_usrloc_regdevi	ces_dioteatkn_uspriber of
MIB::extNames.28				registered end
				devices on sp1
UCD-SNMP-	.100.29	.101.29	kam_usrloc_regdevi	ces_dloweedkn_uspon2ber of
MIB::extNames.29				registered end
				devices on sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.30	.101.30	mysql_replication_d	iscrephancies <u>r</u> ohedksop1
MIB::extNames.30				tables not in sync
				between sp1 and sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.31	.101.31	mysql_replication_d	iscrephancies <u>r</u> ohetksspl2
MIB::extNames.31				tables not in sync
				between sp1 and sp2
UCD-SNMP-	.100.32	.101.32	sip_check_self	Summarized platform
MIB::extNames.32				check on active node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.33	.101.33	mysql_check_self	Average number of
MIB::extNames.33				MySQL queries per
				second on active
				node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.34	.101.34	mysql_replication_cl	heck_MagtBQL replication
MIB::extNames.34				delay in seconds on
				active node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.35	.101.35	mpt_check_self	RAID status on active
MIB::extNames.35				node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.36	.101.36	exim_queue_check_	self Number of mails
MIB::extNames.36				undelivered in MTA
				queue on active node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.37	.101.37	provisioned_subscri	bers_Noberdoorseff
MIB::extNames.37				subscribers
				provisioned on active
				node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.38	.101.38	kam_dialog_active_	check <u>N</u> selber of active
MIB::extNames.38				calls on active node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.39	.101.39	kam_dialog_early_c	heck <u>N</u> aenthber of calls in
MIB::extNames.39				Early Media state on
				active node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.40	.101.40	kam_dialog_type_lo	cal_c heck bsebf active calls
MIB::extNames.40				local on active node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.41	.101.41	kam_dialog_type_re	lay_d kleokb_sebf active
MIB::extNames.41				calls routed via peers
				on active node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.42	.101.42	kam_dialog_type_in	cominty_rabectofsetfoming
MIB::extNames.42				calls on active node

Name in MIB	Result OID	Output OID	Name	Description
UCD-SNMP-	.100.43	.101.43	kam_dialog_type_o	utgointogurtheerkotselftgoing
MIB::extNames.43				calls on active node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.44	.101.44	kam_usrloc_reguse	rs_ch blck<u>m</u>bel fof
MIB::extNames.44				subscribers with at
				least one active
				registration on active
				node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.45	.101.45	kam_usrloc_regdev	ces_dioteckn_setiber of
MIB::extNames.45				registered end
				devices on active
				node
UCD-SNMP-	.100.46	.101.46	mysql_replication_d	iscrephancies <u>r</u> ohethssallf
MIB::extNames.46				tables not in sync
				between sp1 and sp2

Тір

Some of the checks can be disabled (and some are disabled by default) through the config.yml file, and those checks will then return an error message or an empty string in their extOutput. Enable those checks in the config file to get their output in the SNMP OID tree. The enable/disable flags can be found in the checktools section.

A Cloud PBX

The sip:provider PRO comes with a commercial Cloud PBX module to provide B2B features for small and medium sized enterprises. The following chapter describes the configuration of the PBX features.

A.1 Configuring the Device Management

The *Device Management* is used by admins and resellers to define the list of device models, firmwares and configurations available for end customer usage. These settings are pre-configured for the default reseller up-front by Sipwise and have to be set up for every reseller separately, so a reseller can choose the devices he'd like to serve and potentially tweak the configuration for them.

End customers choose from a list of *Device Profiles*, which are defined by a specific *Device Model*, a list of *Device Firmwares* and a *Device Configuration*. The following sub-chapters describe the setup of these components.

To do so, go to Settings \rightarrow Device Management.

Figure 4: Device Management

A.1.1 Setting up Device Models

A *Device Model* defines a specific hardware device, like the vendor, model name, the number of keys and their capabilities. For example a Cisco SPA504G has 4 keys, which can be used for private lines, shared lines (SLA) and busy lamp field (BLF). If you have an additional attendant console, you get 32 more buttons, which can only do BLF.

In this example, we will create a Cisco SPA504G with an additional Attendant Console.

Expand the Device Models row and click Create Device Model.

First, you have to select the reseller this device model belongs to, and define the vendor and model name.

						🛎 Logge	ed in as a	administrator Logout
sip:wise N	IGCP Dash	board					ŵ	III Settings 👻
Devic	Create Devi	ce Mode	el					×
		Reseller			Search	:		
			#	Name	Contract #	Status		d Groups
🗲 Back			1	default	1	active		
			3	Demo Reseller	3	active	1	
Device			Showing 1 to 2 of	2 entries		← ← 1	\rightarrow	⇒
*0						Create	e Resel	ler
Show	2	Vendor	Cisco					
#	3	Model	SPA504G + 1 A	ttendant Console				
No dat	Line/K	ey Range		Name Phone Ke	ys			
Showing			Number of L	ines/Keys 4				
Device								Save
Device Cor	nfigurations							
Device Pro	files							

Figure 5: Create Device Model Part 1

In the *Line/Key Range* section, you can define the first set of keys, which we will label Phone Keys. The name is important, because it is referenced in the configuration file template, which we will look into in the next sections. The SPA504G internal phone keys support private lines (where the customer can assign a normal subscriber, which is used to place and receive standard phone calls), shared lines (where the customer can assign a subscriber which is shared across multiple people) and busy lamp field (where the customer can assign other subscribers to be monitored when they get a call, and which also acts as speed dial button to the subscriber assigned for BLF), so we enable all 3 of them.

	Logged in as administrator Logout
sip:wise NGCP Dashboard	A III Settings →
Devic Create Device Model	×
	^
Model SPA504G + 1 Attendant Console	d Groups
← Back Line/Key Range 4 Name Phone Keys	
Device 5 Number of Lines/Keys 4	
★ C 6 Supports Private Line	=
7 Supports Shared Line 🕑	
8 Supports Busy Lamp # Field	
No dat	Remove
Showing	
Device	Save
Device Configurations	
Device Profiles	T

Figure 6: Create Device Model Part 2

In order to also configure the attendant console, press the *Add another Line/Key Range* button to specify the attendant console keys.

Again provide a name for this range, which will be Attendant Console 1 to match our configuration defined later. There are 32 buttons on the attendant console, so set the number accordingly. Those 32 buttons only support BLF, so make sure to **uncheck** the private and shared line options, and only check the busy lamp field option.

		Logged in as administrator Logout
sip:wise NGCP Dashboard		🕱 🇱 Settings 👻
Devic Create Device Model		×
	9 Name Attendant Console 1	d Groups
← Back 10	Number of Lines/Keys 32	
Device 1	Supports Private Line 🔲	
* C	Supports Shared Line 📃	
Show [Supports Busy Lamp 🗹 Field	=
#		Remove
No dat		
Showing	Add another	Line/Key Range
Device Device Configurations		
Device Profiles		



The last two settings to configure are the *Front Image* and *MAC Address Image* fields. Upload a picture of the phone here in the first field, which is shown to the customer for him to recognize easily how the phone looks like. The MAC image is used to tell the customer where he can read the MAC address from. This could be a picture of the back of the phone with the label where the MAC is printed, or an instruction image how to get the MAC from the phone menu.

The rest of the fields are left at their default values, which are set to work with Cisco SPAs. Their meaning is as follows:

- Bootstrap Sync URI: If a stock phone is plugged in for the first time, it needs to be provisioned somehow to let it know where to fetch its configuration file from. Since the stock phone doesn't know about your server, you have to define an HTTP URI here, where the customer is connected with his web browser to set the according field.
- Bootstrap Sync HTTP Method: This setting defines whether an HTTP GET or POST is sent to the Sync URI.
- Bootstrap Sync Params: This setting defines the parameters appended to the Sync URI in case of a GET, or posted in the request body in case of POST, when the customer presses the Sync button later on.

Finally press Save to create the new device model.

			administrator Logout
sip:wise NGCP Dashboard		Â	🗰 Settings 👻
Devic Create Device Moo	lel		×
		Kelliu	
← Back	Add another	Line/Key Ran	d Groups
Pevice Front Image	Choose File SPA504-front.jpg 13		
MAC Address Image	Choose File SPA504-back.jpg 14		
Bootstrap Sync UR	http://[% client.ip %]/admin/resync		
Bootstrap Sync HTTF Method			•
# Bootstrap Sync No dat Parameters			
Showing		15	
Device		15	Save
Device Configurations			
Device Profiles			



A.1.2 Uploading Device Firmwares

A device model can optionally have one or more device firmware(s). Some devices like the Cisco SPA series don't support direct firmware updates from an arbitrary to the latest one, but need to go over specific firmware steps. In the device configuration discussed next, you can return the *next* supported firmware version, if the phone passes the current version in the firmware URL.

Since a stock phone purchased from any shop can have an arbitrary firmware version, we need to upload all firmwares needed to get from any old one to the latest one. In case of the Cisco SPA3x/SPA5x series, that would be the following versions, if the phone starts off with version 7.4.x:

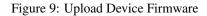
- spa50x-30x-7-5-1a.bin
- spa50x-30x-7-5-2b.bin
- spa50x-30x-7-5-5.bin

So to get an SPA504G with a firmware version 7.4.x to the latest version 7.5.5, we need to upload each firmware file as follows.

Open the Device Firmware row in the Device Management section and press Upload Device Firmware.

Select the device model we're going to upload the firmware for, then specify the firmware version and choose the firmware file, then press *Save*.

					🛓 Logged	in as administrator Logout
sip:wise N	GCP I	Dashboard				🖨 🏭 Settings 👻
Devic C	reate	Device Firm	ware			×
		Device Model			Search:	
			#	Vendor	Model	d Groups
← Back			7	Cisco	SPA504G + 1 Attendant Console	☑ 1
Device			Showing 1 to 1 of 1 en	tries	← 1	→ ⇒
Device					Create Dev	ice Model
* L	2	Version	7.5.1a			
Show	3	Firmware File	Choose File spat	50x-30x-7-5-1a.bin		
# ^					4	Save
No dat.	_					
Showing 0 to	0 of 0 er	ntries				
Device Conf	figuratio	ons				
Device Prof	ilos					



Repeat this step for every firmware in the list above (and any new firmware you want to support when it's available).

A.1.3 Creating Device Configurations

Each customer device needs a configuration file, which defines the URL to perform firmware updates, and most importantly, which defines the subscribers and features configured on each of the lines and keys. Since these settings are different for each physical phone at all the customers, the Cloud PBX module provides a template system to specify the configurations. That way, template variables can be used in the generic configuration, which are filled in by the system individually when a physical device fetches its configuration file.

To upload a configuration template, open the *Device Configuration* row and press *Create Device Configuration*.

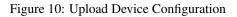
Select the device model and specify a version number for this configuration (it is only for your reference to keep track of different

versions). For Cisco SPA phones, keep the *Content Type* field to text/xml, since the configuration content will be served to the phone as XML file.

For devices other than the Cisco SPA, you might set text/plain if the configuration file is plain text, or application/ octet-stream if the configuration is compiled into some binary form.

Finally	paste th	e configuration	template int	o the Cont	ent area and	d press Save.
	p	.e eenigenaaren		0 0 0		

evic ^{Cro}	eate Device Confi	guration			×
	Device Model			Search:	
		#	Vendor	Model	d Group
Back		7	Cisco	SPA504G + 1 Attendant Console	☑ 1
Device		Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries		← 1	
Device				Create Dev	vice Model
Device	2 Version	1.0			
*0	Content Type	text/xml			
Show	3 Content	<flat-profile> [% barge_in = 0 -%] <profile_rule>[% confil</profile_rule></flat-profile>	g.url %]		Ē
#		<upgrade_enable>Yes</upgrade_enable>			



The templates for certified device models are provided by Sipwise, but you can also write your own. The following variables can be used in the template:

- config.url: The URL to the config file, including the device identifier (e.g. http://sip.example.org:1444/dev ice/autoprov/config/001122334455).
- firmware.maxversion: The latest firmware version available on the system for the specific device.
- firmware.baseurl: The base URL to download firmwares (e.g. http://sip.example.org:1444/device/aut oprov/firmware). To fetch the next newer firmware for a Cisco SPA, you can use the template line [% firmware.baseurl %]/\$MA/from/\$SWVER/next.

- phone.stationname: The name of the station (physical device) the customer specifies for this phone. Can be used to show on the display of the phone.
- phone.lineranges: An array of lines/keys as specified for the device model. Each entry in the array has the following keys:
 - name: The name of the line/key range as specified in the Device Model section (e.g. Phone Keys).
 - num_lines: The number of lines/keys in the line range (e.g. 4 in our Phone Keys example, or 32 in our Attendant Console 1 example).
 - lines: An array of lines (e.g. subscriber definitions) for this line range. Each entry in the array has the following keys:
 - * keynum: The index of the key in the line range, starting from 0 (e.g. keynum will be 3 for the 4th key of our Phone Keys range).
 - * rangenum: The index of the line range, starting from 0. The order of line ranges is as you have specified them (e.g. Phone Keys was specified first, so it gets rangenum 0, Auto Attendant 1 gets rangenum 1).
 - * type: The type of the line/key, on of private, shared or blf.
 - * username: The SIP username of the line.
 - * domain: The SIP domain of the line.
 - * password: The SIP password of the line.
 - * displayname: The SIP Display Name of the line.

Within the configuration template itself, you can use any Template Toolkit directive and any own variables you like (just make sure to not override any of the ones specified above). For documentation on the syntax, please refer to the Template Toolkit Manual.

A.1.4 Creating Device Profiles

When the customer configures his own device, he doesn't select a *Device Model* directly, but a *Device Profile*. A device profile specifies which model is going to be used with which configuration version. This allows the operator to create new configuration files and assign them to a profile, while still keeping older configuration files for reference or roll-back scenarios. It also allows to test new firmwares by creating a test device model with the new firmware and a specific configuration, without impacting any existing customer devices.

To create a *Device Profile* for our phone, open the *Device Profile* row in the *Device Management* section and press *Create Device Profile*.

Select the device configuration (which implicitly identifies a device model) and specify a *Profile Name*. This name is what the customer sees when he is selecting a device he wants to provision, so pick a descriptive name which clearly identifies a device. Press *Save* to create the profile.

sip:wise NGCP D	ashboard							A	III Set	tings –	
Devic ^{Create}	Device Profil	e							×		
Device	Configuration				Search:						
		#	Device Vendor		Device Model		Version				
← Back		7	Cisco		SPA504G + 1 At Console	tendant	1.0	1			
Device		Showing 1 to 1 of 1	entries			⇐	← 1	→	⇒		
Device						Create	Device Co	onfigura	ition		
Device	Profile Name	Cisco SPA504G	+ 1 Attendant Co	onsole 2							
*							3	S	ave		
Show 5		▼ entries				Search:					
# 🔶 Reseller	Name	Device Ven	dor	Device Moc	lel	Configurati	ion Versior	n			
No data available in t	able										
Showing 0 to 0 of 0 ent	ries							+	← →	⇒	

Figure 11: Create Device Profile

Repeat the steps as needed for every device you want to make available to customers.

A.2 Preparing PBX Rewrite Rules

In a PBX environment, the dial-plans usually looks different than for normal SIP subscribers. PBX subscribers should be able to directly dial internal extensions (e.g. 100) instead of the full number to reach another PBX subscriber in the same PBX segment. Therefore, we need to define specific *Rewrite Rules* to make this work.

The PBX dial plans are different from country to country. In the Central European area, you can directly dial an extension (e.g. 100), and if you want to dial an international number like $0049 \ 1 \ 23456$, you have to dial a break-out digit first (e.g. 0), so the number to be dialed is $0 \ 0049 \ 1 \ 23456$. Other countries are used to other break-out codes (e.g. 9), which then results in $9 \ 0049 \ 1 \ 23456$. If you dial a national number like $01 \ 23456$, then the number to actually be dialled is $9 \ 01 \ 23456$.

Since all numbers must be normalized to E.164 format via inbound rewrite rules, the rules need to be set up accordingly.

Let's assume that the break-out code for the example customers created below is 0, so we have to create a *Rewrite Rule Set* with the following rules.

A.2.1 Inbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

- Match Pattern: ^ ([1-9][0-9]+)\$
- Replacement Pattern: \${caller_cloud_pbx_base_cli}\1
- Description: extension to e164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Caller

				Logged in as administrator Logo
p:wise N	NGCP Dashboard			🕈 🇮 Settings 🗸
ewrit	e Rules for pb	x-at		
	★ Create Rewrite	e Rule		Expand Groups
mooundin	tewrite Rules for caller			
	Match Pattern	Replacement Pattern	Description	
↑ ↓	Match Pattern ^([1-9][0-9]+)\$	Replacement Pattern \${caller_cloud_pbx_base_cli}\1	Description extension to e164	



A.2.2 Inbound Rewrite Rules for Callee

These rules are the most important ones, as they define which number formats the PBX subscribers can dial. For the break-out code of 0, the following rules are necessary e.g. for German dialplans to allow pbx internal extension dialing, local area calls without area codes, national calls with area code, and international calls with country codes.

PBX INTERNAL EXTENSION DIALIN

- Match Pattern: ^ ([1-9][0-9]+)\$
- Replacement Pattern: \${caller_cloud_pbx_base_cli}\1
- **Description**: extension to e164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Callee

LOCAL DIALING WITHOUT AREA CODE (USE BREAK-OUT CODE 0)

- Match Pattern: ^0 ([1-9][0-9]+) \$
- Replacement Pattern: \${caller_cc}\${caller_ac}\1
- **Description**: local to e164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Callee

National dialing (use break-out code 0 and prefix area code by 0)

- Match Pattern: ^00 ([1-9][0-9]+) \$
- Replacement Pattern: \${caller_cc}\1
- **Description**: national to e164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Callee

INTERNATIONAL DIALING (USE BREAK-OUT CODE 0 AND PREFIX COUNTRY CODE BY 00)

- Match Pattern: ^000 ([1-9][0-9]+) \$
- Replacement Pattern: \1
- **Description**: international to e164
- Direction: Inbound
- Field: Callee

				Logged in as	administrator Logout
):Wise N	IGCP Dashboard			ŵ	🗰 Settings 👻
ewrit	e Rules for pbx	a-at			
Back	★ Create Rewrite	Rule			* [*] Expand Groups
nbound R	ccessfully created				
nbound R		Replacement Pattern	Description		
nbound R	tewrite Rules for Caller	Replacement Pattern \${caller_cloud_pbx_base_cli}\1	Description internal to e164		
nbound R nbound R	tewrite Rules for Caller tewrite Rules for Callee Match Pattern				
nbound R nbound R	ewrite Rules for Caller Match Pattern ^([1-9][0-9]+)\$	\${caller_cloud_pbx_base_cli}\1	internal to e164		



A.2.3 Outbound Rewrite Rules for Caller

When a call goes to a PBX subscriber, it needs to be normalized in a way that it's call-back-able, which means that it needs to have the break-out code prefixed. We create a rule to show the calling number in international format including the break-out code. For PBX-internal calls, the caller name will be shown (this is handled by implicitly setting domain preferences accordingly, so you don't have to worry about that in rewrite rules).

- Match Pattern: ^ ([1-9][0-9]+) \$
- Replacement Pattern: 000\1
- Description: e164 to full international
- Direction: Outbound
- Field: Caller

SIP:WISE N	IGCP Dashboard			🐔 🇮 Settings 👻
Rewrite	e Rules for pbx-a	t		
← Back	★ Create Rewrite Ru	le		* Expand Groups
	ccessfully created			
	ewrite Rules for Caller ewrite Rules for Callee			
Outbound	Rewrite Rules for Caller			
↑ ↓	Match Pattern ^([1-9][0-9]+)\$	Replacement Pattern	Description e164 to international	
Outbound	Rewrite Rules for Callee			
				_

Figure 14: Outbound Rewrite Rule for Caller

Create a new *Rewrite Rule Set* for each dial plan you'd like to support. You can later assign it to customer domains and even to subscribers, if a specific subscriber of a PBX customer would like to have his own dial plan.

A.3 Creating Customers and Pilot Subscribers

As with a normal SIP Account, you have to create a *Customer* contract per customer, and one *Subscriber*, which the customer can use to log into the web interface and manage his PBX environment.

A.3.1 Creating a PBX Customer

Go to Settings -> Customers and click Create Customer. We need a Contact for the customer, so press Create Contact.

							s administrator Logout
sip:wise	NGCP Dashboard					ñ	III Settings 👻
Custo	Create Customer						×
	Contact				Search:		
		#	Reseller	First Name	Last Name	Email	
← Back		1	default			default- customer@default.invalid	□
Show 5		31		Demo	Reseller	demo@reseller.org	
# ^ Ex		Showing 1	to 2 of 2 entries			← 1 →	-
No data a						1 Create Con	tact
Showing 0	Billing Profile				Search:		
Showing of		#		Reseller		Profile	
		9		Demo Reseller		Billing Profile for PBX	
		1		default		Default Billing Profile	
		Showing 1	to 2 of 2 entries			⇐ ← 1 →	⇒ ▼
							Save
© 2013 Sipv	vise GmbH, all rights reserved.						

Figure 15: Create PBX Customer Part 1

Fill in the desired fields (you need to provide at least the *Email Address*) and press Save.

						🛔 Logg	ed in as administrator	Logout
sīp:wise	NGCP Da	ashboard					🕱 🏭 Settir	ngs 👻
Conta	Create C	ontact					×	
		Reseller			Search:			
			#	Name	Contract #	Status		
🗲 Back			1	default	1	active		
Show 5			9	Demo Reseller	37	active	1	
			Showing 1 to 2 of 2 er	ntries		← ← 1	\rightarrow \Rightarrow	
# ^						Create	e Reseller	-
1	2	First Name	John					
31	3	Last Name	Doe					
Showing 1	4	Email	johndoe@example	org				
		Company						
						5	Save	
© 2013 Sipv	wise GmbH, all i	rights reserved.						

Figure 16: Create PBX Customer Contact

The new *Contact* will be automatically selected now. Also select a *Billing Profile* you want to use for this customer. If you don't have one defined yet, press *Create Billing Profile*, otherwise select the one you want to use.

SID:UUISE	NGCP Dashboard							
Custo	Create Customer					1	A III Setting	;s -
	Contact				Search:			
		#	Reseller	First Name	Last Name	Email		
← Back		33	Demo Reseller	John	Doe	johndoe@example.org/	1	
Contact suce		1	default			default- customer@default.inva	lid	
		31		Demo	Reseller	demo@reseller.org		
Show 5 # A Ex No data a		Showing 1	to 3 of 3 entries			← ← 1 - Create C	→ ⇒	
	Billing Profile				Search:			
Showing 0		#		Reseller		Profile	→	⇒
		9		Demo Reseller		Billing Profile for PBX 2		
		1		default		Default Billing Profile		
							Save	
© 2013 Sipw	ise GmbH, all rights reserved.	_						



Next, you need to select the *Product* for the PBX customer. Since it's going to be a PBX customer, select the product *Cloud PBX Account*.

Since PBX customers are supposed to manage their subscribers by themselves, they are able to create them via the web interface. To set an upper limit of subscribers a customer can create, define the value in the *Max Subscribers* field.

Important

As you will see later, both PBX subscribers and PBX groups are normal subscribers, so the value defined here limits the overall amount of subscribers **and** groups. A customer can create an unlimited amount of subscribers if you leave this field empty.

Press Save to create the customer.

Sip:wise NC	GCP Dashboard					r III S	ettings 👻
Custo c	reate Customer					×	
		Showing 1 to 2 of 2 charles			Create Billing		^
← Back	Product			Search:			
Contacticue		#		Name			
Contact suc		4		Basic SIP Account]	
		5	1	Cloud PBX Account	4]	
show 5		Showing 1 to 2 of 2 entries			← ← 1	\rightarrow \Rightarrow	
# ^ Ex	Max Subscribers	20 2					
No data a	Status	active				•	=
Showing 01	External #						→ ⇒
							Ţ
					3	Save	

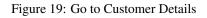
Figure 18: Create PBX Customer Part 3

A.3.2 Creating a PBX Pilot Subscriber

Once the customer is created, you need to create at least one *Subscriber* for the customer, so he can log into the web interface and manage the rest by himself.

Click the Details button on the newly created customer to enter the detailed view.

							Logged in as administrator Logout
	P Dashl	poard					👚 🗰 Settings 👻
Customer	ſS						
← Back Customer #39 succe		e Customer					
Show 5		▼ entries				S	Search:
# External #	Reseller	Contact Email	Product	Billing Profile	Status	Max Number of Subscribers	
39	Demo Reseller	johndoe@example.org	Cloud PBX Account	Billing Profile for PBX	active	20	C Edit × Terminate Edit 1
Showing 1 to 1 of 1	entries						\leftarrow 1 \rightarrow \Rightarrow
© 2013 Sipwise Gm	bH, all rights	reserved.					



To create the subscriber, open the Subscribers row and click Create Subscriber.

				🚢 Logged	l in as administrator Logout
		ashboard		ſ	希 🏭 Settings 👻
	Customer De	etails for #39 (Clo	oud PBX Account)		
	← Back	it			Expand Groups
	Reseller				
	Contact Details				
	Billing Profiles				
1	Subscribers				
	0 of maximum 20 su	bscribers (including PBX groups) c	reated		
2	★ Create Sub	scriber			
	SIP URI	Primary Number	PBX Group	Registered Devices	
	Sound Sets				
	Contract Balance				•



For your pilot subscriber, you need a SIP domain, a pilot number (the main number of the customer PBX), the web credentials for the customer to log into the web interfaces, and the SIP credentials to authenticate via a SIP device.

Important



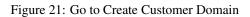
In a PBX environment, customers can create their own subscribers. As a consequence, each PBX customer should have its own SIP domain, in order to not collide with subscribers created by other customers. This is important because two customers are highly likely to create a subscriber (or group, which is also just a subscriber) called office. If they are in the same SIP domain, they'd both have the SIP URI office@pbx.example.org, which is not allowed, and the an end customer will probably not understand why office@pbx.example.org is already taken, because he (for obvious reasons, as it belongs to a different customer) will not see this subscriber in his subscribers list.

Тір

To handle one domain per customer, you should create a wild-card entry into your DNS server like *.pbx.example.org, which points to the IP address of pbx.example.org, so you can define SIP domains like customer1.pbx.example.org or customer2.pbx.example.org without having to create a new DNS entry for each of them. For proper secure access to the web interface and to the SIP and XMPP services, you should also obtain a SSL wild-card certificate for *.pbx.example.org to avoid certification warnings on customers' web browsers and SIP/XMPP clients.

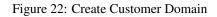
So to create a new domain for the customer, click Create Domain.

p:wise NC	GCP Dashboard				Ĥ	🏭 Settings 👻
usto C	reate Subscriber					×
	Domain			Search:		
Back		# No data available in table	Reseller	Domain		d Groups
BACK		NO GALA AVAIIADIE IN LADIE				
Reseller		Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries			$\leftarrow \rightarrow$	⇒
Contact					Create Dor	main
Billing	E.164 Number					
Subscri	Display Name					
of ma	Web Username					
* C	Web Password					
SIP UF						
						Save



Specify the domain you want to create, and select the PBX Rewrite Rule Set which you created in Section A.2, then click Save.

						idministrator Logout
sip:wise	NGCI	P Dashboard			ñ	III Settings 👻
Doma	Crea	te Domain				×
	1	SIP Domain	customer1.pbx.example.org			
← Back	2	Rewrite Rule Set	pbx-dialplan			•
Show 5					3	Save
#		A Reseller		Domain		
No data av					-	



Finish the subscriber creation by providing an E.164 number, which is going to be the base number for all other subscribers within this customer, the web username and password for the pilot subscriber to log into the web interface, and the sip username and password for a SIP device to connect to the PBX.

The parameters are as follows:

- **Domain**: The domain in which to create the pilot subscriber. Each customer should get his own domain as described above to not collide with SIP usernames between customers.
- E.164 Number: The primary number of the PBX. Calls to this number are routed to the pilot subscriber, and each subsequent subscriber created for this customer will use this number as its base number, suffixed by an individual extension. You can later assign alias numbers also for DID support.
- **Display Name**: This field is used on phones to identify subscribers by their real names instead of their number or extension. On outbound calls, the display name is signalled in the Display-Field of the From header, and it's used as a name in the XMPP contact lists.
- · Web Username: The username for the subscriber to log into the customer self-care web interface. This is optional, if you don't

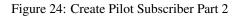
want a subscriber to have access to the web interface.

- Web Password: The password for the subscriber to log into the customer self-care web interface.
- SIP Username: The username for the subscriber to authenticate on the SIP and XMPP service. It is automatically used for devices, which are auto-provisioned via the *Device Management*, or can be used manually by subscribers to sign into the SIP and XMPP service with any arbitrary clients.
- SIP Password: The password for the subscriber to authenticate on the SIP and XMPP service.

					🛔 Logg	ed in as ad	Iministrato	r Logout	
גוף:שוֹצב	NGCP	Dashboard				ñ	🔡 Sett		
Custo	Creat	e Subscriber					×		
		Domain			Search:				
C and			#	Reseller	Domain			l Groups	
← Back			21	Demo Reseller	r customer1.pbx.example.org		1		1
Domain suc			Showing 1 to 1 of 1 entries		⇐ ← 1		⇒		
Reseller					Creat	e Domai	n		
Contact	2	E.164 Number	43 1	9999					
Billing	3	Display Name	Administrator						
Subscri	4	Web Username	administrator						
of ma	5	Web Password	adminpassword						
*0						s	ave		
SIP UR		Primary Num	per	PBX Group	Registered Devices				

Figure 23: Create Pilot Subscriber Part 1

Back	Create	Subscriber				×	d Groups
ain suc		E.164 Number	43 1	9999			•
		Display Name	Administrator				
Contact		Web Username	administrator				
Billing		Web Password	adminpassword				
ubscri	1	SIP Username	administrator				
of ma	2	SIP Password	adminpassword				-
* C		Status	active			•	
SIP UF		External ID					



Once the subscriber is created, he can log into the customer self-care interface at https://<your-ip>:1443/login/ subscriber and manage his PBX, like creating other users and groups, assigning Devices to subscribers and configure the Auto Attendant and more.

A.4 Managing a Customer PBX

With the pilot subscriber created before, the customer can log into the customer self-care interface and manage the PBX.

As an administrator, you can also do this for him, and we will walk through the typical steps as an administrator to configure the different features.

Go the the *Customer Details* of the PBX customer you want to configure, e.g. by navigating to *Settings* \rightarrow *Customers* and clicking the *Details* button of the customer you want to configure.

A.4.1 Creating more Subscribers

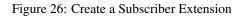
Since we already created a pilot subscriber, more settings now appear on the *Customer Details* view. The sections we're interested in for now are the *Subscribers* and *PBX Groups* sections.

	Logged in as administrator Logout
sip:wise NGCP Dashboard	🔒 🎞 Settings 🚽
Customer Details for #39 (Cloud PBX Account)	
← Back 🖸 Edit	🗳 Expand Groups
Reseller	
Contact Details	
Billing Profiles	
Subscribers	
PBX Groups	
PBX Devices	
Sound Sets	
Contract Balance	
Fraud Limits	

Figure 25: Subscribers and PBX Groups

To create another subscriber for the customer PBX, open the Subscribers row and click Create Subscriber.

					A 1	ogged in as	administrator Logout
5	ip:wise NGCP Dashboard					*	🗰 Settings 👻
C	ustomer Details for #3	9 (Cloud P	BX Acco	ount)			
¢	Back					(* Expand Groups
	Reseller						
	Contact Details						
	Billing Profiles						
1	Subscribers						
	1 of maximum 20 subscribers (including PBX	(groups) created					
2	★ Create Subscriber						
	SIP URI	Primary Number	PBX Group	Registered Devices			
	administrator@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999					



When creating another subscriber in the PBX after having the pilot subscriber, some fields are different now, because the *Domain* and *E.164 Number* are already pre-defined at the pilot subscriber level.

What you need to define for a new subscriber is the *Group* the subscriber is supposed to be in. We don't have a group yet, so create one by clicking *Create Group*.

A PBX Group has four settings:

- Name: The name of the group. This is used to identify a group when assigning it to subscribers on one hand, and also subscribers are pushed as server side contact lists to XMPP clients, where they are logically placed into their corresponding groups.
- Extension: The extension of the group, which is appended to the primary number of the pilot subscriber, so you can actually call the group from the outside. If our pilot subscriber number is 43 1 9999 and the extension is 100, you can reach the group from the outside by dialing 43 1 9999 100. Since PBX Groups are actually just normal subscribers in the system, you can assign *Alias Numbers* to it for DID later, e.g. 43 1 9998.
- Hunting Policy: If you call a group, then all members in this group are ringing based on the policy you choose. Serial

Ringing causes each of the subscribers to be tried one after another, until one of them picks up or all subscribers are tried. Parallel Ringing causes all subscribers in the group to be tried in parallel. Note that a subscriber can have a call-forward configured to some external number (e.g. his mobile phone), which will work as well.

• Serial Hunting Timeout: This value defines for how long to ring each member of a group in case of serial hunting until the next subscriber is being tried.

We will only fill in the *Name* and *Extension* for now, as the hunting policy can be changed later if needed. Click *Save* to create the group.

							💄 Logge	ed in as a	administrator	Logout	
ِ si	jp:wise	NGCP Das	shboard					Â			
С	usto	Create PB	X Group						×		
			Name m	arketing	1						
¢	Back		Extension 1	00	2					Groups	Ξ
	Reseller	Hu	nting Policy	Serial Ringing					•		
	Contact	Serial Hunti	ing Timeout 1	0							
	Billing i Subscri						3		Save		
	of max	ximum 20 subscri	bers (including PBX	groups) created							
	* c	reate Subsc	riber								
	SIP UR			Primary Number	PBX Group	Registered Devices					
	adminis	strator@custome	r1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999							
											•



Once the group is created and selected, fill out the rest of the form as needed. Instead of the *E.164 Number*, you can now only choose the *Extension*, which is appended to the primary number of the pilot subscriber and is then used as primary number for this particular subscribers. Again, if your pilot number is $43 \ 1 \ 9999$ and you choose extension 101 here, the number of this subscriber is going to be $43 \ 1 \ 9999 \ 101$. Also, you can again later assign more alias numbers (e.g. $43 \ 1 \ 9997$) to this subscriber for DID.

The rest of the fields is as usual, with *Display Name* defining the real name of the user, *Web Username* and *Web Password* allowing the subscriber to log into the customer self-care interface, and the *SIP Username* and *SIP Password* to allow signing into

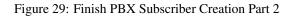
the SIP and XMPP services.

								*	Logged in as a	idministrato	r Logout	
sip:wise	NGCP Das	hboard							Â	III Sett	ings 👻	
Custo	Create Sul	oscriber								×		
		Group					Search:					
			#		Name		Extensio	n			Groups	Ξ
🗲 Back			1		market	ing	100		1 🗹			
PBX group s			Showing 1 to 1 of 1	l entries				← ←	1 → Create Gro	→		
Reseller									Greate Gro	up		
Contac		Extension	101	2								
Billing	Dis	play Name	Peter Buck	3								
Subscri	Web	Username	peter.buck	4								
of ma	Web	Password	somepassword	5								
*0										Save		
SIP UR			Primary Number		BX iroup	Registered Devices						

Figure 28: Finish PBX Subscriber Creation Part 1

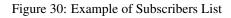
Click Save to create the subscriber.

Create Subscriber		× d Grou
ick		
up s Extension	101	
Display Name	Peter Buck	_
eller		
Web Username	peter.buck	
ng I Web Password	somepassword	
SIP Username	peter.buck 1	
SIP Password	somepassword 2	=
t c Status	active	•
External ID		



Repeat the steps to create all the subscribers and groups as needed. An example of a small company configuration in terms of subscribers and groups might look like this:

teseller									
Contact Details									
Billing Profiles									
ubscribers									
7 of maximum 20 subscribers (including PBX	groups) created								
★ Create Subscriber									
SIP URI	Primary Number	PBX Group	Registered Devices						
administrator@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999								
peter.buck@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999101	marketing							
michelle.miller@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999102	marketing							
frank.fowler@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999201	development							
deborah.dane@customer1.pbx.example.org	43 1 9999202	development							
BX Groups									
BX Devices									
ound Sets									



Тір

The subscribers can be reached via 3 different ways. First, you can call them by their SIP URIs (e.g. by dialing frank. fowler@customer1.pbx.example.org) from both inside and outside the PBX. Second, you can dial by the full number (e.g. 43 1 9999 201; depending on your rewrite rules, you might need to add a leading \+ or 00 or leave out the country code when dialing from the outside, and adding a 0 as break-out digit when dialing from the inside) from both inside and outside the PBX. Third, you can dial just the extension (e.g. 201) from inside the PBX. If the subscriber also has an alias number assigned, you can dial that number also, according to your dial-plan in the rewrite rules.

A.4.2 Assigning Subscribers to Devices

Basically you can register any SIP phone to the system using the SIP credentials of your subscribers. However, the platform supports *Device Provisioning* of certain vendors and models, as described in Section A.1.

To configure a physical device, open the PBX Devices row in the Customer Details view and click Create Device.

You have to set three general parameters for your new device, which are:

- Device Profile: The actual device profile you want to use. This has been pre-configured in the *Device Management* by the administrator or reseller, and the customer can choose from the list of profiles (which is a combination of an actual device plus its corresponding configuration).
- MAC Address/Identifier: The MAC address of the phone to be added. The information can usually either be found on the back of the phone, or in the phone menu itself.
- Station Name: Since you can (depending on the actual device) configure more lines on a phone, you can give it a station name, like Reception or the name of the owner of the device.

In addition to that information, you can configure the lines (subscribers) you want to use on which key, and the mode of operation (e.g. if it's a normal private phone line, or if you want to monitor another subscriber using BLF, or if you want it to act as shared line using SLA).

For example, a *Cisco SPA504G* has 4 keys you can use for private and shared lines as well as BLF on the phone itself, and in our example we have an *Attendant Console* attached to it as well, so you have 32 more keys for BLF.

The settings per key are as follows:

- · Subscriber: The subscriber to use (for private/shared lines) or to monitor (for BLF).
- Line/Key: The key where to configure this subscriber to.
- Line/Key Type: The mode of operation for this key, with the following options (depending on which options are enabled in the *Device Model* configuration for this device:
 - **Private Line**: Use the subscriber as a regular SIP phone line. This means that the phone will register the subscriber, and you can place and receive phone calls with/for this subscriber.
 - Shared Line: The subscriber is also registered on the system and you can place and receive calls. If another phone has the same subscriber also configured as shared line, both phones will ring on incoming calls, and you can pick the call up on either of them. You cannot place a call with this subscriber though if the line is already in use by another subscriber. However, you can "steal" a running call by pressing the key where the shared line is configured to barge into a running call. The other party (the other phone where the shared line is configured too) will then be removed from the call (but can steal the call back the same way).
 - BLF Key: The Busy Lamp Field monitors the call state of another subscriber and provides three different functionalities, depending on the actual state:
 - * Speed Dial: If the monitored subscriber is on-hook, the user can press the button and directly call the monitored subscriber.
 - * Call Pickup: If the monitored subscriber is ringing, the user can press the button to pick up the call on his own phone.
 - * State Indication: It the monitored subscriber is on the phone, the key is indicating that the monitored subscriber is currently busy.

In our example, we will first configure a private line on the first key, and BLF for another subscriber on the second key.

						nistrator Logout
sip:wise	NGCP	Dashboard			â i	\rm Settings 👻
Custo	Creat	e PBX Device				×
	1	Device Profile	Cisco SF	A504G + 1 Attendant Console	•	
← Back	2	MAC Address / Identifier	3CCE73I	0258FD		d Groups
Reseller	3	Station Name	Peter Bu	:k		
Contact		Lines/Keys		4 Subscriber peter.buck@customer1.pbx.example.org	•	
Billing				5 Line/Key Phone Keys - Key/Line 0	-	
PBX Gro			6	Line/Key Type Private Line	•	
PBX De					Remove	
Sound						·
Fraud L					Sav	e
						T

Figure 31: Configuring a PBX Device Part 1

This configures the general options plus the first key. To configure the second key, click *Add another Line/Key* and fill out the second line config accordingly. Click *Save* to save your PBX device configuration.

Custo	mer Details for #3	39 (Cloud PBX	Account)			
← Back	Create PBX Device					×	d Groups
Reseller	Lines/Keys		Subscriber	peter.buck@customer1.pt	ox.example.org	•	
Contact			Line/Key	Phone Keys - Key/Line 0		•	
Billing			Line/Key Type	Private Line		•	
Subscri						Remove	
PBX Gro							=
PBX De		1	Subscriber	michelle.miller@customer	1.pbx.example.org	•	
Sound S		2	Line/Key	Phone Keys - Key/Line 1		•	
Contrac		3	Line/Key Type	BLF Key		•	
Fraud L						Remove	
						4 Save	
© 2013 Sipw	vise GmbH, all rights reserved.						_

Figure 32: Configuring a PBX Device Part 2

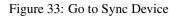
Once the PBX device is saved, you will see it in the list of PBX Devices.

Synchronizing a PBX Device for initial Usage

Since a stock device obtained from an arbitrary distributor doesn't know anything about your system, it can't fetch its configuration from there. For that to work, you need to push the URL of where the phone can get the configuration to the phone once.

In order to do so, click the Sync Device button on the device you want to configure for the very first time.

ng Pr	ofiles					
cribe	ers					
Grou	lps					
Devi	ces					
r Cr	eate PB>	(Device				
	Station Name	Subscriber	MAC Address / Identifier	Device Profile		
0	Peter Buck	Phone Keys/0: private peter.buck@customer1.pbx.example.org Phone Keys/1: blf michelle.miller@customer1.pbx.example.org	3cce73d258fd	Cisco SPA504G + 1 Attendant Console	X Delete 🗹 Edit 🗹 Sync De	vice 1
d Se	ts					
ract	Balance					
d Lir	nits					

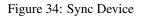


Important

As you will see in the next step, you need the actual IP address of the phone to push the provisioning URL onto it. That implies that you need access to the phone to get the IP, and that your browser is in the same network as the phone in order to be able to connect to it, in case the phone is behind NAT.

Enter the IP Address of the phone (on Cisco SPAs, press Settings 9, where Settings is the paper sheet symbol, and note down the Current IP setting), then click *Push Provisioning URL*.

		🚨 Logg	ged in as a	administrator Logout			
SIP:WISE	NGCP D	ashboard				â	🗱 Settings 👻
Custo	Edit Dep	ployed Device					×
		IP Address 10.15.20.176	1				d Crouns
← Back					2 Push Provi	isioning	a Groups
Reseller	_		_	_	_	-	
Contact	Details						
Billing P	rofiles						
Subscrib	ers						
PBX Gro	ups						
PBX Dev							
* G	reate PBX	Device					
	Station Name	Subscriber	MAC Address / Identifier	Device Profile			
N=O	Peter	Phone Keys/0: private	3cce73d258fd	Cisco SPA504G + 1			



You will be redirected directly to the phone, and the Provisioning URL is automatically set. If everything goes right, you will see a confirmation page from the phone that it's going to reboot.

SPA will resync the profile when it is not in use and reboot. You can click <u>here</u> to return to the configuration page.

Figure 35: Device Sync Confirmation from Phone

You can close the browser window/tab and proceed to sync the next subscriber.

Tip

You only have to do this step once per phone to tell it the actual provisioning URL, where it can fetch the configuration from. From there, it will regularly sync with the server automatically to check for configuration changes, and applies them automatically.

A.4.3 Configuring Sound Sets for the Customer PBX

In the *Customer Details* view, there is a row *Sound Sets*, where the customer can define his own sound sets for *Auto Attendant*, *Music on Hold* and the *Office Hours Announcement*.

To create a new sound set, open the Sound Sets row and click Create Sound Set.

If you do this as administrator or reseller, the Reseller and/or Customer is pre-selected, so keep it as is. If you do this as customer, you don't see any *Reseller* or *Customer* fields.

So the important settings are:

- Name: The name of the sound set as it will appear in the *Subscriber Preferences*, where you can assign the sound set to a subscriber.
- · Description: A more detailed description of the sound set.
- **Default for Subscribers**: If this setting is enabled, then the sound set is automatically assigned to all already existing subscribers which do NOT have a sound set assigned yet, and also for all newly created subscribers.

Fill in the settings and click Save.

sip:wise	NGCP Dashboard					ñ	🗰 Settings 👻
Soun	Create Sound Sets						×
						Create Resell	er
← Back	Customer		.	Sear			
Show 5		# 39	Reseller Demo Reseller	Contact Email johndoe@example.org	External #	Status active	
#		Showing 1 to 1	of 1 entries		(=	← 1 →	-
" No data a						Create Contra	ct
Showing 01	Name	mypbxset	1				
	Description	My Default S	ound Set 2				
	Default for Subscribers	☑ 3					
							_
						4	Save
© 2013 Sipw	vise GmbH, all rights reserved.						



To upload files to your Sound Set, click the Files button for the Sound Set.

Uploading a Music-on-Hold File

Open the *music_on_hold* row and click *Upload* on the *music_on_hold* entry. Choose a WAV file from your file system, and click the *Loopplay* setting if you want to play the file in a loop instead of just once. Click *Save* to upload the file.

📥 Logg	ed in as	administrator Logout
sip:wise NGCP Dashboard	â	
Mana Edit music_on_hold		×
1 Loopplay 🗹		
← Ba 2 Soundfile Choose File manolo_campcoffee.wav		d Groups
nusic_c Name	3	Save
music_on_hold		
pbx		
© 2013 Sipwise GmbH, all rights reserved.	_	

Figure 37: Upload MoH Sound File

Uploading Auto-Attendant Sound Files

When configuring a Call Forward to the Auto Attendant, it will play the following files:

- aa_welcome: This is the welcome message (the greeting) which is played when someone calls the Auto Attendant.
- each available pair of aa_X_for/aa_X_option: Each menu item in the Auto Attendant consists of two parts. The for part, which plays something like *Press One for*, and the option part, which play something like *Marketing*. The Auto Attendant only plays those menu options where both the for part and the option part is present, so if you only have 3 destinations you'd like to offer, and you want them to be on keys 1, 2 and 3, you have to upload files for aa_1_for, aa_1_option, aa_2_for, aa_2_option and aa_3_for and aa_3_option.



Important

The sound files only define the general structure of what is being played to the caller. The actual destinations behind your options are configured separately in Section A.4.4.

An example configuration could look like this:

← Back			** Expand Groups	
Sound handle successfull	y uploaded			
music_on_hold				
pbx				
Name	Filename	Loop		=
aa_welcome	welcome.wav			
aa_1_for	press-1.wav			
aa_1_option	for-sales.wav			
aa_2_for	press-2.wav			
aa_2_option	for-service.wav			
aa_3_for	press-3.wav			
aa_3_option	for-tech-support.wav			
aa_4_for				
aa_4_option				
aa_5_for				•

Figure 38: Upload Auto Attendant Sound File

A.4.4 Configuring the Auto Attendant

The Auto Attendant feature can be activated for any subscriber in the Customer PBX individually. There are three steps involved. First, you have to prepare a *Sound Set* to have Auto Attendant sound files. Second, you have to configure the destinations for the various options you provide (e.g. pressing 1 should go to the marketing subscriber, 2 to development and 3 to some external number). Third, you have to set a Call Forward to the Auto Attendant.

To do so, go to *Customer Details* and in the *Subscribers* section, click the *Preferences* button of the subscriber, where the Auto Attendant should be set.

Preparing the Sound Set

Create a Sound Set and upload the Sound Files for it as described in Section A.4.3. Back in the *Subscriber Preferences* view, set the *Customer Sound Set* preference to the Sound Set to be used. To do so, click *Edit* on the *Customer Sound Set* preference and assign the set to be used.

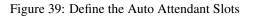
Configuring the Auto Attendant Slots

In the Auto Attendant Slots section, click the Edit Slots button to configure the destination options.

Click Add another Slot to add a destination option, select the Key the destination should be assigned to, and enter a Destination. The destination can be a subscriber username (e.g. marketing), a full SIP URI (e.g. sip:michelle.miller@custom er1.pbx.example.org or any external SIP URI) or a number or extension (e.g. 491234567 or 101).

Repeat the step for every option you want to add, then press Save.

		Logged in as administrator Logout
sip:wise NGCP Dashboard		😭 🇱 Settings 👻
Subse Edit Auto Attendant Slot		×
IVR Slots	Key 1 1	▼ d Groups
← Back	Destination marketing 2	≡
Call For Voicem		Remove
Fax2Ma	Key 2 Destination 491234567	
		Remove
Show	. [
#	3	Add another Slot
No dat		4 Save
Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries		€ ← → ⇒



Activating the Auto Attendant

Once the Sound Set and the Slots are configured, activate the Auto Attendant by setting a Call Forward to Auto Attendant.

To do so, open the *Call Forwards* section in the *Subscriber Preferences* view and press *Edit* on the Call Forward type (e.g. *Call Forward Unconditional* if you want to redirect callers unconditionally to the Auto Attendant).

Select Auto Attendant and click Save to activate the Auto Attendant.

				dministrator Logout
sip:wise	NGCP Dashboard		â	🗰 Settings 👻
Subsc	Edit Call Forward U	conditional		×
← Back Call For	Destination	 Voicemail Conference Fax2Mail Auto Attendant Office Hours Announcement URI/Number 		d Groups
Type Call Fo Call Fo Call Fo Call Fo	URI/Number for (seconds)	300	2 Advanced View	ave
Fax2Ma	ail and Voicebox il and Sendfax tendant Slots			

Figure 40: Set a Call Forward to Auto Attendant

Тір

As with any other Call Forward, you can define more complex forwarding rules in the *Advanced View* to only forward the call to the Auto Attendant during specific time periods, or as a fallback if no one picks up the office number.

A.5 Device Auto-Provisioning Security

A.5.1 Server Certificate Authentication

The Cisco SPA phones can connect to the provisioning interface of the PBX via HTTP and HTTPS. When perform secure provisioning over HTTPS, the phones validate the server certificate to check if its a legitimate Cisco provisioning server. To pass this check, the provisioning interface must provide a certificate signed by Cisco for that exact purpose.

The following steps describe how to obtain such a certificate.

First, a new SSL key needs to be generated:

```
$ openssl genrsa -out provisioning.key 2048
```

```
Generating RSA private key, 2048 bit long modulus
...+++
e is 65537 (0x10001)
```

Next, a certificate signing request needs to be generated as follows. Provide your company details.

Important

The **Common Name (e.g. server FQDN or YOUR name)** field is crucial here. Provide an FQDN which the phones will later use via DNS to connect to the provisioning interface, for example *pbx.example.org*. Cisco does **NOT** support wild-card certificates.



Leave the password empty when asked for it (press Enter without entering anything).

```
$ openssl req -new -key provisioning.key -out provisioning.csr
You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated
into your certificate request.
What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a DN.
There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank
For some fields there will be a default value,
If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.
```

```
Country Name (2 letter code) [AU]:AT

State or Province Name (full name) [Some-State]:Vienna

Locality Name (eg, city) []:Vienna

Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]:Sipwise GmbH

Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:Operations

Common Name (e.g. server FQDN or YOUR name) []:pbx.example.org

Email Address []:office@sipwise.com
```

Please enter the following 'extra' attributes
to be sent with your certificate request
A challenge password []:
An optional company name []:

Finally, compress the provisioning.csr file via ZIP and send it to our Cisco sales representative. If in doubt, you can try to send it directly to ciscosb-certadmin@cisco.com asking them to sign it.



Important

Only send the CSR file. Do NOT send the key file, as this is your private key!



Important

Ask for both the signed certificate AND a so-called *combinedca.crt* which is needed to perform client authentication via SSL. Otherwise you can not restrict access to Cisco SPAs only.

You will receive a signed CRT file, which Sipwise can use to configure the PBX provisioning interface.

A.5.2 Client Certificate Authentication

If a client connects via HTTPS, the server also checks for the client certificate in order to validate that the device requesting the configuration is indeed a legitimate Cisco phone, and not a fraudulent user with a browser trying to fetch user credentials.

A.6 Device Bootstrap and Resync Workflows

The IP phones supported by the PBX need to initially be configured to fetch their configuration from the system. Since the phones have no initial information about the system and its provisioning URL, they need to be boot-strapped. Furthermore, changes for a specific device might have to be pushed to the device immediately instead of waiting for it to re-fetch the configuration automatically.

The following chapters describe the work-flows how this is accomplished without having the customer directly accessing the phone.

Initial Bootstrapping

Cust	omer IP P	hone PBX Par	nel
	press "Sync Device" button		
	<	200, serve "IP address" field	
	enter phone IP and submit		
	~	301, redirect to phone URL	
	automatically push sync URL		
	200, confirm sync		
		fetch device configuration	
		200, serve device configuration	

Figure 41: Initially bootstrap a PBX device

Subsequent Device Resyncs

If one of the subscribers configured on a PBX device is registered via SIP, the system can trigger a re-sync of the phone directly via SIP without having the customer enter the IP of the phone again. This is accomplished by sending a special NOTIFY message

to the subscriber:

```
NOTIFY sip:subscriber@domain SIP/2.0
To: <sip:subscriber@domain>
From: <sip:subscriber@domain>;tag=some-random-tag
Call-ID: some-random-call-id
CSeq: 1 NOTIFY
Subscription-State: active
Event: check-sync
Content-Length: 0
```

In order to prevent unauthorized re-syncs, the IP phone challenges the request with its own SIP credentials, so the NOTIFY is sent twice, once without authentication, and the second time with the subscriber's own SIP credentials.

Cust	omer II	P Phone	PBX Panel	SIP Proxy
	press "Sync Device" button			
	4	200 if regis	tered	
			NOTIFY priva	ate subscriber
			NOTIF	Y private subscriber
		401 Unauthorized		
				401 Unauthorized
			NOTIFY priva	ate subscriber
			NOTIF	Y private subscriber
		200 OK		
				200 OK
		fetch device configuration		
		200, serve device configur	ation	

Figure 42: Resync a registered PBX device

A.6.2 Panasonic Device Bootstrap

Initial Bootstrapping

Panasonic provides a zero-touch provisioning mechanism in their firmwares, which causes the factory-reset phones to connect to a Panasonic web service at *https://provisioning.e-connecting.net* to check if a custom provisioning URL is configured for the MAC address of the phone. If an association between the MAC and a provisioning URL is found, the web service redirects the phone to the provisioning URL, where the phone connects to in order to obtain the configuration file.

Cust	omer IP P	hone F	PBX I	Panel P	anasonic Re	direct Server
	create PBX device		,	create MAC/Prov-UR	L association	
	4	2	200	<	200	
	plug-in factory reset phone	fetch device association				
				301 redirect 1	to CloudPBX	
		fetch device configuration				
		200, serve device configurat	tion			

Figure 43: Initially bootstrap a Panasonic phone

The CloudPBX module ensures that when an end customer creates a Panasonic device, the MAC address is automatically provisioned on the Panasonic web service via an API call, so the customer's phone can use the correct provisioning URL to connect to the auto-provisioning server of the CloudPBX.

As a result, no customer interaction is required to bootstrap Panasonic phones, other than just creating the phone with the proper MAC on the CloudPBX web interface.

Factory Reset

For already provisioned phones, the end customer might need to perform a factory reset:

- Press Settings or Setup
- Enter #136
- Select Factory Setting and press Enter
- Select Yes and press Enter

• Select Yes and press Enter

The default username for factory-reset phones is admin with password adminpass.

Subsequent Device Resyncs

The same procedure as with Cisco SPA phones applies, once a subscriber configured on the phone is registered.

A.6.3 Yealink Device Bootstrap

Initial Bootstrapping

Yealink provides a zero-touch provisioning mechanism in their firmwares, which causes the factory-reset phones to connect to a Yealink web service at *https://rps.yealink.com* to check if a custom provisioning URL is configured for the MAC address of the phone. If an association between the MAC and a provisioning URL is found, the web service redirects the phone to the provisioning URL, where the phone connects to in order to obtain the configuration file.

If both Cisco SPA and Yealink phones are used, an issue with the Cisco-signed server certificate configured on the provisioning port (1444 by default) of the CloudPBX provisioning server arises. Yealink phones by default only connect to trusted server certificates, and the Cisco CA certificate used to sign the server certificate is not trusted by Yealink. Therefore, a two-step approach is used to disable the trusted check via a plain insecure http port (1445 by default) first, where only device-generic config options are served. No user credentials are provided in this case, because no SSL client authentication can be performed. The generic configuration disables the trusted check, and at the same time changes the provisioning URL to the secure port, where the Yealink phone is now able to connect to.

Cust	omer IP F	Phone PBX	Panel Yealink Red	irect Serve
	create PBX device		create MAC/Prov-URL association	
	4	200		
	plug-in factory reset phone	fetch device association		
			301 redirect to CloudPBX	
		fetch bootstrap configuration via http on port 1445		
		200, serve generic configuration		
		fetch device configuration via https on port 1444		
		200, serve device configuration		

Figure 44: Initially bootstrap a Yealink phone

er

The CloudPBX module ensures that when an end customer creates a Yealink device, the MAC address is automatically provisioned on the Yealink web service via an API call, so the customer's phone can use the correct insecure bootstrap provisioning URL to connect to the auto-provisioning server of the CloudPBX for the generic configuration, which in turn provides the information on where to connect to for the secure, full configuration.

As a result, no customer interaction is required to bootstrap Yealink phones, other than just creating the phone with the proper MAC on the CloudPBX web interface.

Factory Enable Yealink Auto-Provisioning

Older Yealink firmwares don't automatically connect to the Yealink auto-provisioning server on initial boot, so it needs to be enabled manually by the end customer.

- Log in to http://phone-ip/servlet?p=hidden&q=load using admin and admin as user/password when prompted
- Change Redirect Active to Enabled
- Press Confirm and power-cycle phone

Subsequent Device Resyncs

The same procedure as with Cisco SPA phones applies, once a subscriber configured on the phone is registered.

B Sipwise Clients and Apps

The sip:provider PRO comes with two optional and commercial Unified Communication Clients for full end-to-end integration of voice, video, chat and presence features. On one hand, there is the sip:pone Desktop client for Microsoft Windows, Apple OSX and Linux. On the other hand, Sipwise provides the sip:phone Mobile App for Apple iOS and Android.

Both clients are fully brand-able to the customer's corporate identity. The clients are not part of the standard delivery and need to be licensed separately. The mobile client does not yet support the full range of features.

B.1 sip:phone Mobile App

The sip:phone Mobile App is a mobile client for iOS and Android and supports voice calls via SIP, as well as presence and instant messaging via XMPP. The following chapters describe the steps needed to integrate it into the sip:provider PRO.

B.1.1 Zero Config Launcher

Part of the mobile apps is a mechanism to sign up to the service via a 3rd party web site, which is initiated on the login screen and rendered within the app. During the sign-up process, the 3rd party service is supposed to create a new account and/or subscriber on the sip:provider PRO (e.g. automatically via the API) and provide the end user with the access credentials.

In order to minimize the end customer steps to log in using these credentials (especially ruling out the need to manually enter them), the mobile apps come with a zero config mechanism, which allows to deliver the access credentials via a side channel (e.g. Email, SMS) and packed into a URL, which the user just has to click, and which automatically launches the app with the correct credentials. The following picture shows the overall work flow.

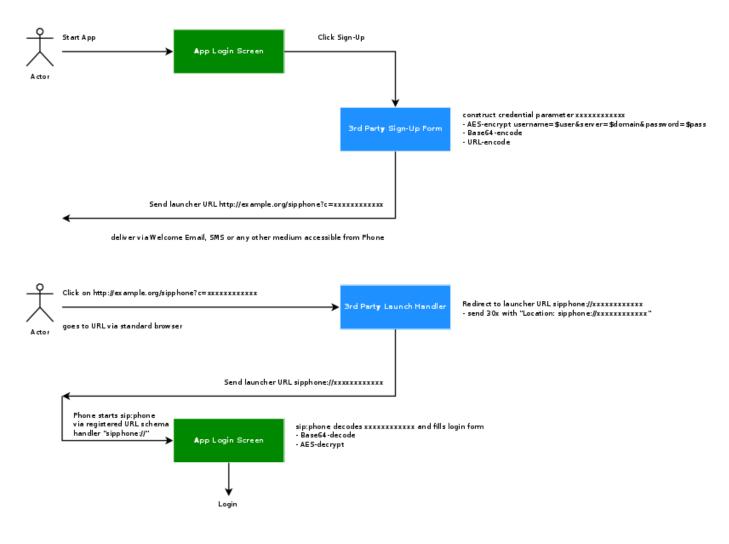


Figure 45: Provisioning Push Workflow

There are two components provided by a 3rd party system, which are not part of the sip:provider PRO. One is the 3rd Party Sign-Up Form, and the other is the 3rd Party Launch Handler. The purpose of these components is to make the end customer to open a link with the access credentials via the sip:phone app.

3rd Party Sign-Up Form

The 3rd Party Sign-Up Form is a web site the app shows to the end user when he taps the sign-up link on the *Login Screen* of the app. There, the end customer usually provides his contact details like name, address, phone number and/or email address etc. After validation, this web site creates the account and/or subscriber on the sip:provider PRO via the API.

After successfully creating the account and/or subscriber, this site needs to construct a specially crafted URL, which is sent back to the end customer via a side channel. Ideally, this channel would be SMS if you want to verify the end user's mobile number, or an email if you want to verify her email address.

The sip:phone app registers a URL schema handler for URLs starting with sipphone://. If you start such a link, the app performs a Base64 decoding of the string right after the sipphone:// schema string, then decrypts the resulting binary string via AES using keys defined during the branding step. The resulting string is supposed to be

username=\$user&server=\$domain&password=\$password.

Therefore, the *3rd Party Sign-Up Form* needs to construct this string using the credentials defined while creating the subscriber via the sip:provider PRO API, then encrypt it via AES, and finally perform a Base64 encoding of the result.

Note

Up until and including version mr3.8.11 of the sip:provider PRO, the SIP login credentials are used here. Future versions will connect to the REST interface of the sip:provider PRO using the web credentials first and fetch the SIP credentials along with other settings from there.

An example code snipped in Perl to properly encode such a string is outlined here. The AES key and initialization vector (\$key and \$iv) are the standard values of the sip:phone app and should work, if you haven't specified other values during the branding process.

```
#!/usr/bin/perl -w
use strict;
use Crypt::Rijndael;
use MIME::Base64;
use URI::Escape;
my $key = 'iBmTdavJ8joPW3HO';
my $iv = 'tww211Qe6cmywrp3';
my $plain = do { local $/; <> };
# pkcs#5 padding to 16 bytes blocksize
my $pad = 16 - (length $plain) % 16;
$plain .= pack('C', $pad) x $pad;
my $cipher = Crypt::Rijndael->new(
        $key,
        Crypt::Rijndael::MODE_CBC()
);
$cipher->set_iv($iv);
my $crypted = $cipher->encrypt($plain);
# store b64-encoded string and print to STDOUT
my $b64 = encode_base64($crypted, '');
print $b64, "\n";
# print to STDOUT using URL escaping also
print uri_escape($b64), "\n";
```

This snippet takes a string from STDIN, encrypts it via AES, encodes it via Base64 and prints the result on STDOUT. It also prints a second line with the same string, but this time URL escaped. To test it, you would run it as follows on a shell, granted it's stored at /path/to/encrypt.pl.

This command would result in the output strings CI8VN8toaE40w8E40H2rAuFj3Qev9QdLI/Wv/VaBCVK2yNkBZjxE9 eafXkkrQfmYdeu01PquS5P40zhUq8Mfjg== and CI8VN8toaE40w8E40H2rAuFj3Qev9QdLI%2FWv%2FVaBCVK 2yNkBZjxE9eafXkkrQfmYdeu01PquS5P40zhUq8Mfjg%3D%3D. The sip:phone can use the former string to automatically fill in the login form of the Login Screen if started via a Link like sipphone://CI8VN8toaE40w8E40H2rAuFj3Qev9 QdLI/Wv/VaBCVK2yNkBZjxE9eafXkkrQfmYdeu01PquS5P40zhUq8Mfjg==.

Here is the same code in PHP.

```
#!/usr/bin/php
<?php
$key = "iBmTdavJ8joPW3HO";
$iv = "tww211Qe6cmywrp3";
$clear = fgets(STDIN);
$cipher = fnEncrypt($clear, $key, $iv);
echo $cipher, "\n";
echo urlencode($cipher), "\n";
function fnEncrypt($clear, $key, $iv) {
        $pad = 16 - strlen($clear) % 16;
        $clear .= str_repeat(pack('C', $pad), $pad);
        return rtrim(base64_encode(mcrypt_encrypt(
                MCRYPT_RIJNDAEL_128, $key, $clear,
                MCRYPT_MODE_CBC, $iv)), "\0");
}
?>
```

Similar to the perl version, you can call it like this:

However, a URL with the sipphone:// schema is not displayed as a link in SMS or Email clients and thus can not be clicked by the end customer, so you need to make a detour via a normal http:// URL. To do so, you need a *3rd Party Launch Handler* to trick the phone to open such a link.

This means that the *3rd Party Sign-Up Form* needs to return a link with an URL pointing to the *3rd Party Launch Handler* and pass the URL escaped string gathered above to the client via SMS or Email. Since it is a standard http://link, it is click-able on the phone and can be launched from virtually any client (SMS, Email etc.) which properly renders an HTML link.

A possible SMS sent to the end customer (via the phone number entered in the sign-up from) could therefore look as follows (trying to stay below 140 chars).

```
http://example.org/p?c=CI8VN8toaE40w8E40H2rAuFj3Qev9QdLI
%2FWv%2FVaBCVK2yNkBZjxE9eafXkkrQfmYdeu01PquS5P40zhUq8Mfjg%3D%3D to launch sipphone
```

An HTML Email could look like this:

Welcome to Example.org, click here to log in.

That way, you can on one hand verify the contact details of the user, and on the other hand send her the login credentials in a secure manner.

3rd Party Launch Handler

The URL http://www.example.org/sipphone mentioned above can be any simple script, and its sole purpose is to send back a 301 Moved Permanently or 302 Moved Temporarily with a Location:sipphone://xxxxxxx keader to tell the phone to open this link via the sip:phone app. The *xxxxxxxxxxxx* is actually the plain (non-URL-escaped) string generated by the script above.

An example CGI script performing this task follows.

```
#!/usr/bin/perl -w
use strict;
use CGI;
my $q = CGI->new;
my $c = $q->param('c');
print CGI::redirect("sipphone://$c");
```

The script simply takes the URL parameter c from the URL http://www.example.org/sipphone?c=CI8VN8toaE40 w8E40H2rAuFj3Qev9QdLI%2FWv%2FVaBCVK2yNkBZjxE9eafXkkrQfmYdeu01PquS5P40zhUq8Mfjg%3D%3D crafted above and puts its content into a Location header using the sipphone:// schema, and finally sends a 301 Moved Permanently back to the phone.

The phone follows the redirect by opening the URL using the sip:phone app, which in turn decrypts the content and fills in the login form.

Note

Future versions of the sip:provider PRO will ship with this launch handler integrated in the system. Up until and including version mr3.8.11, this script needs to be installed on any webserver manually.

B.1.2 Mobile Push Notification

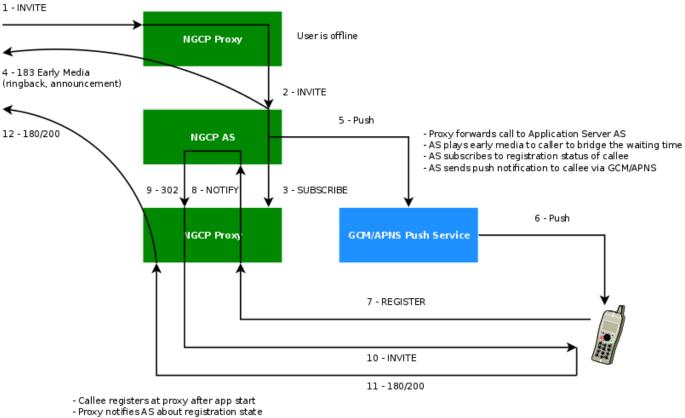
The sip:phone provides *mobile push* functionality to remotely start the app via the Google GCM or Apple APNS notification systems on inbound calls, in case the app is not registered.

Caution

Although stopping the App on the phone and letting it wake up via the push notification system safes some battery power on the phone, the whole push notification concept is a best effort framework for both iOS and Android provided by Apple and Google, respectively, and is therefore not 100% reliable.

Architecture

If the mobile push functionality is enabled, the call-flow looks as follows if there are no devices registered for a subscriber.



- AS deflects call to proxy

- Proxy completes call to callee

Figure 46: Mobile Push Workflow

- 1. Caller sends INVITE to proxy
- 2. Callee is offline, proxy forwards call to AS
- 3. AS subscribes to registration state of callee at proxy
- 4. AS plays early media to caller for feedback, as process might take a while
- 5. AS sends push request to GCM/APNS service
- 6. GCM/APNS service delivers request to callee

- 7. Callee accepts request and confirms app start (unattended on Android), registers at proxy
- 8. Proxy sends registration notification to AS
- 9. AS deflects call back to proxy
- 10. Proxy sends INVITE to callee
- 11. Callee accepts call
- 12. Response is sent back to caller, call setup completed

In case of a timeout (no registration notification within a certain time) at the application server, the call is rejected with an error.

Configuring the Push Daemon

The push daemon needs your specific keys and/or certificates obtained from Apple and Google, respectively.

Please read the official GCM Getting Started Guide for Android on how to obtain a push notification key from Google for GCM.

For instructions how to generate Apple push notification certificates and keys, please read the official Provisioning Procedures from Apple.

The final configuration in your /etc/ngcp-config/config.yml should look as follows.

```
pushd:
 apns:
   certificate: '/etc/ssl/private/your.phone.push.dev.pem'
   enable: 'yes'
   endpoint: gateway.push.apple.com
   feedback_endpoint: feedback.push.apple.com
   feedback_interval: 3600
   key: ''
   socket_timeout: 0
 enable: 'yes'
 qcm:
   enable: 'yes'
   port: 45060
 processes: 4
 ssl: 'yes'
```

Once configured, execute ngcpcfg apply to confirm your changes.

C NGCP configs overview

C.1 config.yml overview

Config.yml is the main configuration YAML file used by Sipwise NGCP. After every changes it need to run the command ngcpcfg apply to apply changes (followed by ngcpcfg push in the PRO version to apply changes to sp2). The following is a brief description of the main variables contained into /etc/ngcp-config/config.yml file.

C.1.1 asterisk

The following is the asterisk section:

```
asterisk:
 log:
   facility: local6
  rtp:
   maxport: 20000
   minport: 10000
  sip:
   bindport: 5070
    dtmfmode: rfc2833
  voicemail:
    enable: 'no'
    fromstring: 'Voicemail server'
    greeting:
     busy_custom_greeting: '/home/user/file_no_extension'
     busy_overwrite_default: 'no'
     busy_overwrite_subscriber: 'no'
     unavail_custom_greeting: '/home/user/file_no_extension'
     unavail_overwrite_default: 'no'
     unavail_overwrite_subscriber: 'no'
   mailbody: 'You have received a new message from {\rm M}_{\rm CALLERID} in voicebox {\rm M}_{\rm MAILBOX}
       } on ${VM_DATE}.'
   mailsubject: '[Voicebox] New message ${VM_MSGNUM} in voicebox ${VM_MAILBOX}'
   max_msg_length: 180
   maxgreet: 60
   maxmsq: 30
   maxsilence: 0
   min_msg_length: 3
   normalize_match: '^00|\+([1-9][0-9]+)$'
    normalize_replace: '$1'
    serveremail: voicebox@sip.sipwise.com
```

· log.facility: rsyslog facility for asterisk log, defined in /etc/asterisk/logger.conf.

• rtp.maxport: RTP maximum port used by asterisk.

- rtp.minport: RTP minimun port used by asterisk.
- sip.bindport: SIP asterisk internal bindport.
- voicemail.greetings.*: set the audio file path for voicemail custom unavailable/busy greetings
- · voicemail.mailbody: Mail body for incoming voicemail.
- · voicemail.mailsubject: Mail subject for incoming voicemail.
- voicemail.max_msg_length: Sets the maximum length of a voicemail message, in seconds.
- · voicemail.maxgreet: Sets the maximum length of voicemail greetings, in seconds.
- voicemail.maxmsg: Sets the maximum number of messages that may be kept in any voicemail folder.
- · voicemail.min_msg_length: Sets the minimun length of a voicemail message, in seconds.
- voicemail.maxsilence: Maxsilence defines how long Asterisk will wait for a contiguous period of silence before terminating an incoming call to voice mail. The default value is 0, which means the silence detector is disabled and the wait time is infinite.
- · voicemail.serveremail: Provides the email address from which voicemail notifications should be sent.
- voicemail.normalize_match: Regular expression to match the From number for calls to voicebox.
- · voicemail.normalize_replace: Replacement string to return, in order to match an existing voicebox.

C.1.2 backuptools

The following is the backup tools section:

```
backuptools:
  cdrexport_backup:
    enable: 'no'
  etc_backup:
    enable: 'no'
  mail:
    address: noc@company.org
    error_subject: '[ngcp-backup] Problems detected during daily backup'
    log_subject: '[ngcp-backup] Daily backup report'
    send_errors: 'no'
    send_log: 'no'
 mysql_backup:
    enable: 'no'
    exclude_dbs: 'syslog sipstats information_schema'
  rotate_days: 7
  storage_dir: '/var/backup/ngcp_backup'
  temp_backup_dir: '/tmp/ngcp_backup'
```

· backuptools.cdrexport_backup.enable: Enable backup of cdrexport (.csv) directory.

- backuptools.etc_backup.enable: Enable backup of /etc/* directory.
- · backuptools.mail.address: Destination email address for backup emails.
- · backuptools.mail.error_subject: Subject for error emails.
- backuptools.mail.log_subjetc: Subject for daily backup report.
- backuptools.mail.send_error: Send daily backup error report.
- backuptools.mail.send_log: Send daily backup log report.
- backuptools.mysql_backup.enable: Enable daily mysql backup.
- backuptools.mysql_backup.exclude_dbs: exclude mysql databases from backup.
- backuptools.rotate_days: Number of backups to keep stored.
- backuptools.storage_dir: Storage directory of backups.
- · backuptools.temp_backup_dir: Temporary storage directory of backups.

C.1.3 cdrexport

The following is the cdr export section:

```
cdrexport:
  daily_folder: 'yes'
  export_failed: 'no'
  export_incoming: 'no'
  exportpath: '/home/jail/home/cdrexport'
  full_names: 'yes'
  monthly_folder: 'yes'
```

- cdrexport.daily_folder:: Set yes if you want to create a daily folder for CDRs under the configured path.
- · cdrexport.export_failed: Export CDR for failed calls.
- cdrexport.export_incoming: Export CDR for incoming calls.
- · cdrexport.exportpath: The path to store CDRs in .csv format.
- · cdrexport.full_names: Use full namen for CDRs instead of short ones.
- cdrexport.monthly_folder: Set yes if you want to create a monthly folder (ex. 201301 for January 2013) for CDRs under configured path.

C.1.4 checktools

The following is the check tools section:

```
checktools:
  collcheck:
    cpuidle: 0.1
    dfused: 0.9
    eximmaxqueue: 15
    loadlong: 2
    loadmedium: 2
    loadshort: 3
    maxage: 600
    memused: 0.7
    siptimeout: 15
    swapfree: 0.5
  asr_nsr_statistics: 1
  exim_check_enable: 0
  force: 0
  kamailio_check_dialog_active_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_dialog_early_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_dialog_incoming_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_dialog_local_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_dialog_outgoing_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_dialog_relay_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_usrloc_regdevices_enable: 1
  kamailio_check_usrloc_regusers_enable: 1
  mpt_check_enable: 1
  mysql_check_enable: 1
  mysql_check_replication: 1
  oss_check_provisioned_subscribers_enable: 1
  sip_check_enable: 1
  sipstats_check_num_packets: 1
  sipstats_check_num_packets_perday: 1
  sipstats_check_partition_size: 1
  snmpd:
    communities:
      public:
        - localhost
```

- checktools.collcheck.cpuidle: Sets the minimum value for CPU usage (0.1 means 10%).
- checktools.collcheck.dfused: Sets the maximun value for DISK usage (0.9 means 90%).
- · checktools.collcheck.loadlong/loadlong/loadshort: Max values for load (long, short, medium term).
- · checktools.collcheck.maxage: Max age in seconds.
- · checktools.collcheck.memused: Sets the maximun value for MEM usage (0.7 means 70%).

- · checktools.collcheck.siptimeout: Max timeout for sip options.
- checktools.collcheck.swapfree: Sets the minimun value for SWAP free (0.5 means 50%).
- · checktools.exim_check_enable: Exim queue check plugin for collectd.
- checktools.asr_nsr_statistics: enable/Disable ASR/NSR statistics.
- · checktools.force: Perform checks even if not active in /etc/motd.
- checktools.kamailio_check_dialog_*/kamailio_check_usrloc_*: Enable/Disable SNMP collective check pluglin for Kamailio.
- checktools.mpt_check_enable: MPT raid SNMP check plugin.
- checktools.mysql_check_enable: MySQL SNMP check plugin.
- checktools.mysql_check_replication: MySQL replication check.
- checktools.oss_check_provisioned_subscribers_enable: OSS provisioned subscribers count plugin.
- checktools.sip_check_enable/sipstats_check_*: Enable/Disable SIP check plugins.
- checktools.snmpd.communities: Sets the snmp community and sources (separated by comma , ex. source: 127.0.0.1, 10.10.10.2, 10.10.10.3).

C.1.5 cleanuptools

The following is the cleanup tools section:

```
cleanuptools:
    acc_cleanup_days: 90
    archive_targetdir: '/var/backups/cdr'
    binlog_days: 15
    cdr_archive_months: 12
    cdr_backup_months: 6
    cdr_backup_retro: 3
    compress: gzip
    sql_batch: 10000
    trash_cleanup_days: 30
```

- cleanuptools.acc_cleanup_days: Clean up ACC entry older then 90 days.
- cleanuptools.binlog_days: Expire MySQL binlogs after 15 days.
- cleanuptools.cdr_archive_months: How many months worth of records to keep in the table and not move into the monthly archive tables.
- cleanuptools.cdr_backup_months: How many months worth of records to keep in the table and not move into the monthly backup tables.

- cleanuptools.cdr_backup_retro: How many months to process for backups, going backwards in time. Using the example above, with this value set to "3", the months October, September and August would be backed up, while any older records would be left untouched.
- · cleanuptools.sql_batch: How many records to process within a single statement.
- cleanuptools.trash_cleanup_days: Clean up acc_trash and acc_backup entry after 30 days.

C.1.6 database

The following is the database section:

```
database:
    bufferpoolsize: 24768M
```

database.bufferpoolsize: Innodb_buffer_pool_size value in /etc/mysql/my.cnf

C.1.7 faxserver

The following is the fax server section:

```
faxserver:
  default_owner: 4312345
  failfax_recv_email: root@localhost
  failfax_send_email: failfax@ngcp.sipwise.local
  fax_gateways:
    - sip:127.0.0.1:5070
  hylafax:
    jobretry: 1
    start: 'yes'
  iaxmodem:
    start: 'yes'
  type: software
  mail_from: 'Sipwise NGCP FaxServer <voipfax@ngcp.sipwise.local>'
  webfax_user: ngcpwebfax
```

- · faxserver.failfax_recv_email: A recipient of a failed "fax receive".
- faxserver.failfax_send_email: A recipient of a failed "fax send".
- faxserver.fax_gateways: Set here the correct Patton gateway ip address and port (Available only with the hardware fax solution).
 Otherwise leave as it is.
- faxserver.hylafax.jobretry: How many times the hylafax faxserver should retry to send fax.
- faxserver.hylafax.start: Enable hylafax at startup.
- faxserver.iaxmodem.start: Enable iaxmodem at startup.

- faxserver.type: Type of faxserver solution. Accepted values are software or hardware (with Patton Gateway).
- faxserver.mail_from: Sets the e-mail From Header for incoming fax.
- · faxserver.webfax_user: User used when sending fax from CSC web interface.

C.1.8 general

The following is the general section:

```
general:
  adminmail: adjust@example.org
  companyname: sipwise
  lang: en
```

- · general.adminmail: Email address used by monit to send notifications to.
- general.lang: Sets sounds language (e.g: de for German)

C.1.9 heartbeat

The following is the heartbeat section:

```
heartbeat:
hb_watchdog:
    action_max: 5
    enable: 'yes'
    interval: 10
    transition_max: 10
    pingnodes:
    - 10.60.1.1
    - 192.168.3.4
```

- · heartbeat.hb_watchdog.enable: Enable heartbeat watchdog in order to prevent and fix split brain scenario.
- heartbeat.hb_watchdog.action_max: Max errors before taking any action.
- heartbeat.hb_watchdog.interval: Interval in secs for the check.
- heartbeat.hb_watchdog.transition_max: Max checks in transition state.
- heartbeat.pingnodes: List of pingnodes for heartbeat. Minimun 2 entries, otherwise by default NGCP will set the default gateway and DNS servers as pingnodes.

C.1.10 intercept

The following is the legal intercept section:

```
intercept:
  captagent:
    port: 18090
    schema: http
  enabled: 'no'
```

· intercept.captagent.enable: Enable captagent for Lawful Interception (addiotional NGCP module).

C.1.11 kamailio

The following is the kamailio section:

```
kamailio:
  lb:
    debug: 'no'
    extra_sockets: ~
    max_forwards: 70
    nattest_exception_ips:
      - 1.2.3.4
      - 5.6.7.8
    pkg_mem: 16
    port: 5060
    security:
      dos_ban_enable: 'yes'
      dos_ban_time: 300
      dos_reqs_density_per_unit: 50
      dos_sampling_time_unit: 5
      dos_whitelisted_ips: ~
      dos_whitelisted_subnets: ~
      failed_auth_attempts: 3
      failed_auth_ban_enable: 'yes'
      failed_auth_ban_time: 3600
    shm_mem: 2012
    start: 'yes'
    strict_routing_safe: 'no'
    tcp_children: 8
    tcp_max_connections: 2048
    tls:
      enable: 'no'
      port: 5061
      sslcertfile: '/etc/kamailio/kamailio-selfsigned.pem'
      sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/kamailio/kamailio-selfsigned.key'
    udp_children: 8
```

```
use_dns_cache: 'on'
proxy:
  allow_info_method: 'no'
  allow_peer_relay: 'no'
  allow_refer_method: 'no'
  authenticate_bye: 'no'
  cf_depth_limit: 10
  children: 8
  debug: 'no'
  default_expires: 3600
  enum_suffix: e164.arpa.
  filter_100rel_from_supported: 'yes'
  fritzbox:
    enable: 'no'
    prefixes:
      - 112
      - 110
      -118[0-9]{2}
  foreign_domain_via_peer: 'no'
  ignore_auth_realm: 'no'
  keep_original_to: 'no'
  max_expires: 43200
  max_gw_lcr: 128
  max_registrations_per_subscriber: 5
  min_expires: 60
  nathelper_dbro: 'no'
  natping_interval: 30
  natping_processes: 7
  nonce_expire: 300
  pbx:
    hunt_display_indicator: '[h]'
  perform_peer_lcr: 0
  pkg_mem: 16
  port: 5062
  presence:
    enable: 'yes'
  proxy_lookup: 'no'
  set_ruri_to_peer_auth_realm: 'no'
  shm_mem: 2012
  start: 'yes'
  tcp_children: 4
  use_enum: 'no'
  usrloc_dbmode: 1
```

- kamailio.lb.debug: Enable intensive debug level.
- · kamailio.lb.extra_sockets: Add here extra sockets for Load Balancer.

- · kamailio.lb.max_forwards: Set the value for the Max Forwards SIP header for outgoing messages.
- kamailio.lb.nattest_exception_ips: List of IPs that don't need the NAT test.
- kamailio.lb.shm_mem: Shared memory used by Kamailio Load Balancer. The default value is auto generated by the system, depending on your system architecture.
- kamailio.lb.pkg_mem: PKG memory used by Kamailio Load Balancer. The default value is auto generated by the system, depending on your system architecture.
- kamailio.lb.security.dos_ban_enable: Enable/Disable DoS Ban.
- kamailio.lb.security.dos_ban_time: Sets the ban time.
- kamailio.lb.security.dos_reqs_density_per_unit:: Sets the requests density per unit (if we receive more then * lb.dos_reqs_density_per_u within dos_sampling_time_unit the user will be banned).
- kamailio.lb.security.dos_sampling_time_unit: Sets the DoS unit time.
- kamailio.lb.security.dos_whitelisted_ips: Write here the whitelisted IPs.
- · kamailio.lb.security.failed_auth_attempts: Sets how many authentication attempts allowed before ban.
- kamailio.lb.security.failed_auth_ban_enable: Enable/Disable authentication ban.
- kamailio.lb.security.failed_auth_ban_time: Sets how long a user/IP has be banned.
- kamailio.lb.strict_routing_safe: Enable strict routing handle feature.
- kamailio.lb.tls.enable: Enable TLS socket.
- · kamailio.lb.tls.port: Set TLS listening port.
- kamailio.lb.tls.sslcertificate: Path for the SSL certificate.
- kamailio.lb.tls.sslcertkeyfile: Path for the SSL key file.
- kamailio.proxy.allow_info_method: Allow INFO method.
- kamailio.proxy.allow_peer_relay: Allow peer relay. Call coming from a peer that doesn't matcha a local subscriber will try to go out again, matching the peering rules.
- kamailio.proxy.allow_refer_method: Allow REFER method. Enable it with caution.
- kamailio.proxy.authenticate_bye: Enable BYE authentication.
- · kamailio.proxy.cf_depth_limit: CF loop detector. How many CF loops are allowed before drop the call.
- kamailio.proxy.debug: Enable intensive debug level.
- kamailio.proxy.default_expires: Default expires value in seconds for REGISTER messages.
- kamailio.proxy.foreign_domain_via_peer: Enable calls to foreign domains via peers.
- kamailio.proxy.shm_mem: Shared memory used by Kamailio Proxy. The default value is auto generated by the system, depending on your system architecture.

- kamailio.proxy.pkg_mem: PKG memory used by Kamailio Proxy. The default value is auto generated by the system, depending
 on your system architecture.
- kamailio.proxy.enum_suffix: Sets ENUM suffix don't forget . (dot).
- kamailio.proxy.filter_100rel_from_supported: Enable filtering of 100rel from Supported header, to disable PRACK.
- kamailio.proxy.fritzbox.enable: Enable detection for Fritzbox special numbers. Ex. Fritzbox add the AC prefix to emergency numbers.
- kamailio.proxy.fritzbox.prefixes: Specifies special prefixes to detect in order to remove the AC prefix added by Fritzbox.
- kamailio.proxy.ignore_auth_realm: Ignore SIP authentication realm.
- kamailio.proxy.keep_original_to: Not used now.
- kamailio.proxy.max_expires: Sets the maximum expires in seconds for registration.
- · kamailio.proxy.max_gw_lcr: Defines the maximum number of gateways in lcr_gw table
- kamailio.proxy.max_registrations_per_subscriber: Sets the maximum registration per subscribers.
- · kamailio.proxy.min_expires: Sets the minimum expires in seconds for registration.
- kamailio.proxy.natping_interval: Sets the NAT ping interval in seconds.
- kamailio.proxy.nathelper_dbro: Defaul is "no". This will be "yes" on CARRIER in order to activate the use of a read-only connection using LOCAL_URL
- kamailio.proxy.nonce_expire: Nonce expire time in seconds.
- kamailio.proxy.perform_peer_lcr: Enable/Disable Least Cost Routing based on peering fees.
- kamailio.proxy.port: SIP listening port.
- kamailio.proxy.presence.enable: Enable/disable presence feature
- · kamailio.proxy.set_ruri_to_peer_auth_realm: Set R-URI using peer auth realm
- kamailio.proxy.use_enum: Enable/Disable ENUM feature.

C.1.12 mediator

The following is the mediator section:

```
mediator:
    interval: 10
```

• mediator.interval: Running interval of mediator.

C.1.13 nginx

The following is the nginx section:

```
nginx:
status_port: 8081
xcap_port: 1080
```

· nginx.status_port: Status port used by nginx server

• nginx.xcap_port: XCAP port used by nginx server

C.1.14 ntp

The following is the ntp server section:

ntp:

servers:

- 0.debian.pool.ntp.org
- 1.debian.pool.ntp.org
- 2.debian.pool.ntp.org
- 3.debian.pool.ntp.org

• ntp.servers: Define your NTP server list.

C.1.15 ossbss

The following is the ossbss section:

```
ossbss:
 apache:
   autoprov:
     certfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.crt'
     certkeyfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.key'
     host: localhost
     port: 1444
      sslcertfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.crt'
     sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.key'
      sslclientauth: 'yes'
   port: 2443
   proxyluport: 1080
   restapi:
      sslcertfile: '/etc/ngcp-panel/api_ssl/api_ca.crt'
     sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/ngcp-panel/api_ssl/api_ca.key'
   serveradmin: support@sipwise.com
   servername: "\"myserver\""
```

```
ssl_enable: 'yes'
  sslcertfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.crt'
  sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.key'
frontend: fcgi
htpasswd:
    pass: '{SHA}w4zj3mxbmynIQ1jsUEjSkN2z2pk='
    user: ngcpsoap
logging:
  apache:
    acc:
      facility: daemon
      identity: oss
      level: info
    err:
      facility: local7
      level: info
  ossbss:
    facility: local0
    identity: provisioning
    level: DEBUG
  web:
    facility: local0
    level: DEBUG
provisioning:
  allow_ip_as_domain: 1
  allow_numeric_usernames: 0
  auto_allow_cli: 1
  carrier:
    account_distribution_function: roundrobin
    prov_distribution_function: roundrobin
  credit_warnings:
      domain: example.com
      recipients:
        - nobody@example.com
      threshold: 1000
  faxpw_min_char: 0
  log_passwords: 0
  no_logline_truncate: 0
  pw_min_char: 6
  routing:
    ac_regex: '[1-9]\d{0,4}'
   cc_regex: '[1-9]\d{0,3}'
    sn_regex: '[1-9]\d+'
  tmpdir: '/tmp'
```

- ossbss.htpasswd: Sets the username and SHA hashed password for SOAP access. You can generate the password using the following command: htpasswd -nbs myuser mypassword.
- ossbss.provisioning.allow_ip_as_domain: Allow or not allow IP address as SIP domain (0 is not allowed).
- ossbss.provisioning.allow_numeric_usernames: Allow or not allow numeric SIP username (0 is not allowed).
- ossbss.provisioning.faxpw_min_char: Minimum number of characters for fax passwords.
- ossbss.provisioning.pw_min_char: Minimum number of characters for sip passwords.
- ossbss.provisioning.log_password: Enable logging of passwords.
- ossbss.provisioning.routing: Regexp for allowed AC (Area Code), CC (Country Code) and SN (Subscriber Number).

C.1.16 pbx (only with additional cloud PBX module installed)

The following is the PBX section:

```
pbx:
  bindport: 5085
  enable: 'no'
  highport: 55000
  lowport: 50001
  media_processor_threads: 10
  session_processor_threads: 10
  xmlrpcport: 8095
```

• pbx.enable: Enable Cloud PBX module.

C.1.17 prosody

The following is the prosody section:

prosody: ctrl_port: 5582 log_level: info

- prosody.ctrl_port: XMPP server control port.
- prosody.log_level: Prosody loglevel.

C.1.18 pushd

The following is the pushd section:

```
pushd:
  apns:
    certificate: ''
    enable: 'no'
    endpoint: gateway.sandbox.push.apple.com
    feedback_endpoint: feedback.sandbox.push.apple.com
    feedback_interval: 3600
    key: ''
    socket_timeout: 0
  enable: 'no'
  gcm:
    enable: 'no'
    key: ''
  port: 45060
  processes: 4
  ssl: 'yes'
  unique_device_ids: 'no'
```

- pushd.enable: Enable/Disable Push Notification feature.
- pushd.apns.certificate: Specify the Apple certificate for push notification.
- pushd.apns.enable: Enable/Disable Apple push notification.
- pushd.apns.key: Specify the Apple key for push notification.
- pushd.gcm.enable: Enable/Disable Google push notification.
- pushd.gcm.key: Specify the Google key for push notification.

C.1.19 qos

The following is the QOS section:

```
qos:
tos_rtp: 184
tos_sip: 184
```

- qos.tos_rtp: TOS value for RTP traffic.
- qos.tos_sip: TOS value for SIP traffic.

C.1.20 rate-o-mat

The following is the rate-o-mat section:

```
rateomat:
  enable: 'yes'
  loopinterval: 10
  splitpeakparts: 0
```

· rateomat.enable: Enable/Disable Rate-o-mat

- rateomat.loopinterval: How long we shall sleep before looking for unrated CDRs again.
- rateomat.splitpeakparts: Whether we should split CDRs on peaktime borders.

C.1.21 redis

The following is the redis section:

```
redis:
   database_amount: 16
   port: 6379
   syslog_ident: redis
```

- redis.database_amout: Set the number of databases in redis. The default database is DB 0.
- · redis.port: Accept connections on the specified port, default is 6379
- redis.syslog_ident: Specify the syslog identity.

C.1.22 reminder

The following is the reminder section:

```
reminder:
  retries: 2
  retry_time: 60
  sip_fromdomain: voicebox.sipwise.local
  sip_fromuser: reminder
  wait_time: 30
  weekdays: '2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7'
```

- · reminder.retries: How many times the reminder feature have to try to call you.
- reminder.retry_time: Seconds between retries.
- reminder.wait_time: Seconds to wait for an answer.

C.1.23 rsyslog

The following is the rsyslog section:

```
rsyslog:
  elasticsearch:
    action:
      resumeretrycount: '-1'
    bulkmode: 'on'
    dynSearchIndex: 'on'
    enable: 'yes'
    queue:
      dequeuebatchsize: 300
      size: 5000
      type: linkedlist
  external_address:
  external_log: 0
  external_loglevel: warning
  external_port: 514
  external_proto: udp
  ngcp_logs_preserve_days: 93
```

- · rsyslog.elasticsearch.enable: Enable/Disable Elasticsearch web interface
- rsyslog.external_address: Set the remote rsyslog server.
- rsyslog.ngcp_logs_preserve_days: Specify how many days to preserve old rotated log files in /var/log/ngcp/old path.

C.1.24 rtpproxy

The following is the rtp proxy section:

```
rtpproxy:
  allow_userspace_only: 'yes'
  maxport: 40000
  minport: 30000
  rtp_timeout: 21600
  rtp_timeout_onhold: 3600
```

- rtpproxy.allow_userspace_only: Enable/Disable the user space failover for rtpengine (yes means enable). By default rtpengine works in kernel space.
- rtpproxy.maxport: Maximum port used by rtpengine for RTP traffic.
- rtpproxy.minport: Minimum port used by rtpengine for RTP traffic.
- rtpproxy.rtp_timeout: Maximum limit in seconds for a call (6h).
- rtpproxy.rtp_timeout_onhold: Maximum limit in seconds for an onhold (1h).

230 / 236

C.1.25 security

The following is the security section:

```
security:
firewall:
   blacklist_networks_4: ~
   blacklist_networks_6: ~
   enable: 'yes'
   sipwise_support_access: 'no'
   whitelist_networks_4: ~
   whitelist_networks_6: ~
```

• security.firewall.enable: Enable/Disable security configuration for IPv6 and IPv6 (sysctl_ipv6.conf, sysctl_ipv4.conf).

C.1.26 sems

The following is the SEMS section:

```
sems:
 bindport: 5080
 conference:
   enable: 'yes'
   max_participants: 10
  debug: 'no'
 highport: 50000
  lowport: 40001
 media_processor_threads: 10
 prepaid:
   enable: 'yes'
  sbc:
   calltimer_enable: 'yes'
   calltimer_max: 3600
   outbound_timeout: 6000
   sdp_filter:
     codecs: PCMA, PCMU, telephone-event
     enable: 'yes'
     mode: whitelist
    session_timer:
     enable: 'yes'
     max_timer: 7200
     min_timer: 90
     session_expires: 300
  session_processor_threads: 10
  vsc:
   block_override_code: 80
   cfb_code: 90
```

```
cfna_code: 93
cft_code: 92
cfu_code: 72
clir_code: 31
directed_pickup_code: 99
enable: 'yes'
park_code: 97
reminder_code: 55
speedial_code: 50
unpark_code: 98
voicemail_number: 2000
xmlrpcport: 8090
```

- sems.conference.enable: Enable/Disable conference feature.
- · sems.conference.max_participants: Sets the number of concurrent participant.
- · sems.highport: Maximum ports used by sems for RTP traffic.
- sems.debug: Enable/Disable debug mode.
- · sems.lowport: Minimum ports used by sems for RTP traffic.
- sems.prepaid.enable: Enable/Disable prepaid feature.
- sems.sbc.calltimer_max: Sets the maximum call duration for inter-domain calls.
- · sems.sbc.outbound_timeout:: Sets the maximum call duration for outboud calls.
- sems.sbc.session_timer.enable: Enable/Disable session timers (deprecated, use the web interface configuration).
- sems.vsc.*: Define here the VSC codes.

C.1.27 sshd

The following is the sshd section:

```
sshd:
    listen_addresses:
        - 0.0.0.0
```

• sshd: specify interface where SSHD should run on. By default sshd listens on all IPs found in network.yml with type *ssh_ext*. Unfortunately sshd can be limited to IPs only and not to interfaces. Current option allows to specify allowed IPs (or all IPs with 0.0.0.0).

C.1.28 voisniff

The following is the voice sniffer section:

```
voisniff:
  admin_panel: 'no'
  daemon:
    bpf: 'port 5060 or 5062 or ip6 proto 44 or ip[6:2] & 0x1fff != 0'
    external_interfaces: 'eth0 eth1'
    filter:
      exclude:
        _
          active: 0
          case_insensitive: 1
          pattern: '\ncseq: *\d+ +(register|notify|options)'
      include: []
    internal_interfaces: lo
    mysql_dump_threads: 4
    start: 'no'
    threads_per_interface: 10
  partitions:
    increment: 700000
    keep: 10
```

• voisniff.admin_panel: Enable/Disable SIP STATS on Admin interface. Default is no.

• voisniff.deamon.external_interfaces: Define binding interfaces.

• voisniff.deamon.start: Change to yes if you want voisniff start at boot. Default is no.

C.1.29 www_admin

The following is the WEB Admin interface (www_admin) section:

```
www_admin:
    ac_dial_prefix: 0
    apache:
        autoprov_port: 1444
    billing_features: 1
    callingcard_features: 0
    callthru_features: 0
    cc_dial_prefix: 00
    conference_features: 1
    contactmail: adjust@example.org
    dashboard:
        enabled: 1
    default_admin_settings:
        call_data: 0
```

```
is_active: 1
  is_master: 0
  read_only: 0
  show_passwords: 1
domain:
  preference_features: 1
  rewrite_features: 1
  vsc_features: 0
fastcgi_workers: 2
fax_features: 1
fees_csv:
  element_order:
    - source
    - destination
    - direction
    - zone
    - zone_detail
    - onpeak_init_rate
    - onpeak_init_interval
    - onpeak_follow_rate
    - onpeak_follow_interval
    - offpeak_init_rate
    - offpeak_init_interval

    offpeak_follow_rate

    - offpeak_follow_interval
    - use_free_time
http_admin:
  autoprov_port: 1444
  port: 1443
  serveradmin: support@sipwise.com
  servername: "\"myserver\""
  ssl_enable: 'yes'
  sslcertfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.crt'
  sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.key'
http_csc:
  autoprov_bootstrap_port: 1445
  autoprov_port: 1444
  port: 443
  serveradmin: support@sipwise.com
  servername: "\"myserver\""
  ssl_enable: 'yes'
  sslcertfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.crt'
  sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.key'
logging:
  apache:
    acc:
      facility: daemon
      identity: oss
```

level: info

```
err:
      facility: local7
      level: info
peer:
 preference_features: 1
peering_features: 1
security:
  password_allow_recovery: 0
  password_max_length: 40
  password_min_length: 6
  password_musthave_digit: 0
  password_musthave_lowercase: 1
 password_musthave_specialchar: 0
 password_musthave_uppercase: 0
  password_sip_autogenerate: 0
  password_sip_expose_subadmin: 1
 password_web_autogenerate: 0
  password_web_expose_subadmin: 1
speed_dial_vsc_presets:
  vsc:
    - '*0'
    - '*1'
    - '*2'
    - '*3'
    - '*4'
    - '*5'
    - '*6'
    - '*7'
    - '*8'
    - '*9'
subscriber:
 auto_allow_cli: 0
 extension_features: 0
voicemail_features: 1
```

• www_admin.http_admin.*: Define the Administration interface and certificates.

- www_admin.http_csc.*: Define the Customers interface and certificates.
- www_admin.contactmail: Email to show in the GUI's Error page.

C.1.30 www_csc

The following is the WEB Subscriber selfcare (www_csc) section:

www_csc:

```
ac_dial_prefix: 0
apache:
  port: 443
  serveradmin: support@sipwise.com
  servername: myserver
  ssl_enable: 'yes'
  sslcertfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.crt'
  sslcertkeyfile: '/etc/ngcp-config/ssl/myserver.key'
cc_dial_prefix: 00
display_account_info: 0
enable: 'no'
fastcgi_workers: 2
logging:
  apache:
    acc:
      facility: daemon
      identity: csc
      level: info
    err:
      facility: local7
      level: info
main_menu:
  account: 1
  addressbook: 1
  callblock: 1
  callforward: 1
  calllist: 1
  desktop: 1
  device: 0
  fax: 1
  reminder: 1
  voicebox: 1
payment_features: 0
sip_server: sip.yourdomain.tld
site_config:
  company:
    city: ''
    email: ''
    fax: ''
    hotline: ''
    logo: https://please.adjust.invalid/path/to/logo.gif
    name: 'Your Company'
    phone: ''
    street: ''
    webserver: ''
  default_language: en
  default_uri: '/desktop'
  languages:
```

```
- en
- es
- fr
- de
- it
title: 'Sipwise NGCP CSC'
site_domain: sip.yourdomain.tld
tftp_server: tftp.yourdomain.tld
```

- www_csc.apache: Apache configuration for /etc/apache/site-enable/ngcp-csc-admin file.
- www_csc.company: Set here your own company information.
- www_csc.default_language: Default language for CSC interface.
- www_csc.title: Title for CSC interface.
- www_csc.sip_server: Set here your sip server URL.